
SoftLayer API Python Client Documentation

Release latest

SoftLayer Technologies, Inc.

Aug 04, 2021

CONTENTS

1	Installation	3
1.1	What's Included	3
1.2	Using Pip	3
1.3	Debian/Ubuntu	3
1.4	From Source	3
2	Configuration File	5
3	API Documentation	7
3.1	Getting Started	7
3.2	Managers	8
3.2.1	SoftLayer.account	8
3.2.2	SoftLayer.autoscale	10
3.2.3	SoftLayer.block	11
3.2.4	SoftLayer.cdn	18
3.2.5	SoftLayer.dedicatedhost	21
3.2.6	SoftLayer.dns	23
3.2.7	SoftLayer.email	26
3.2.8	SoftLayer.event_log	27
3.2.9	SoftLayer.file	28
3.2.10	SoftLayer.firewall	34
3.2.11	SoftLayer.hardware	36
3.2.12	SoftLayer.image	42
3.2.13	SoftLayer.ipsec	44
3.2.14	SoftLayer.load_balancer	48
3.2.15	SoftLayer.metadata	50
3.2.16	SoftLayer.network	51
3.2.17	SoftLayer.ordering	57
3.2.18	SoftLayer.sshkey	63
3.2.19	SoftLayer.ssl	64
3.2.20	SoftLayer.ticket	65
3.2.21	SoftLayer.vs	67
3.2.22	SoftLayer.vs_capacity	77
3.2.23	SoftLayer.vs_placement	78
3.3	Making API Calls	79
3.4	Debugging	81
3.5	Dealing with KeyError Exceptions	81
3.5.1	The Solution	82
3.6	API Reference	82
3.6.1	SoftLayer Python API Client	82

4	Command-line Interface	87
4.1	Configuration Setup	87
4.2	Usage Examples	88
5	Debugging	91
6	Command Directory	93
6.1	Account Commands	93
6.1.1	account summary	93
6.1.2	account events	93
6.1.3	account event-detail	93
6.1.4	account invoices	94
6.1.5	account invoice-detail	94
6.1.6	account billing-items	95
6.1.7	account item-detail	95
6.1.8	account cancel-item	95
6.1.9	account orders	95
6.1.10	account licenses	96
6.2	Autoscale Commands	96
6.2.1	autoscale list	96
6.2.2	autoscale detail	96
6.2.3	autoscale scale	96
6.2.4	autoscale logs	97
6.2.5	autoscale tag	97
6.2.6	autoscale edit	98
6.3	Block Commands	99
6.3.1	block access-authorize	99
6.3.2	block access-list	99
6.3.3	block access-revoke	100
6.3.4	block access-password	100
6.3.5	block replica-failback	101
6.3.6	block replica-failover	101
6.3.7	block replica-order	101
6.3.8	block replica-partners	102
6.3.9	block replica-locations	102
6.3.10	block snapshot-cancel	103
6.3.11	block snapshot-create	103
6.3.12	block snapshot-delete	104
6.3.13	block snapshot-disable	104
6.3.14	block snapshot-enable	104
6.3.15	block snapshot-schedule-list	105
6.3.16	block snapshot-list	105
6.3.17	block snapshot-order	105
6.3.18	block snapshot-restore	106
6.3.19	block volume-cancel	106
6.3.20	block volume-count	107
6.3.21	block volume-detail	107
6.3.22	block volume-duplicate	107
6.3.23	block volume-list	108
6.3.24	block volume-modify	109
6.3.25	block volume-order	110
6.3.26	block volume-set-lun-id	111
6.3.27	block volume-limits	111
6.3.28	block volume-refresh	111

6.3.29	block volume-convert	112
6.3.30	block subnets-list	112
6.3.31	block subnets-assign	112
6.3.32	block subnets-remove	113
6.3.33	block volume-refresh	113
6.3.34	block volume-convert	113
6.3.35	block volume-set-note	114
6.3.36	block disaster-recovery-failover	114
6.4	Interacting with CDN	114
6.4.1	cdn detail	114
6.4.2	cdn list	115
6.4.3	cdn origin-add	115
6.4.4	cdn origin-list	116
6.4.5	cdn origin-remove	116
6.4.6	cdn purge	117
6.4.7	cdn edit	117
6.5	Call API	118
6.5.1	call-api	118
6.6	Shell	119
6.7	MetaData	119
6.7.1	metadata	120
6.8	Config	120
6.8.1	config setup	120
6.8.2	config show	121
6.8.3	setup	121
6.9	Dedicated Host Commands	121
6.9.1	dedicatedhost list	121
6.9.2	dedicatedhost create	122
6.9.3	dedicatedhost create-options	123
6.9.4	dedicatedhost detail	123
6.9.5	dedicatedhost cancel	124
6.9.6	dedicatedhost cancel-guests	124
6.9.7	dedicatedhost list-guests	124
6.10	DNS Management	125
6.10.1	dns import	125
6.10.2	dns record-add	125
6.10.3	dns record-edit	127
6.10.4	dns record-list	127
6.10.5	dns record-remove	128
6.10.6	dns zone-create	128
6.10.7	dns zone-delete	128
6.10.8	dns zone-list	128
6.10.9	dns zone-print	129
6.11	Email Commands	129
6.11.1	email list	129
6.11.2	email detail	129
6.11.3	email edit	129
6.12	Event-Log Commands	130
6.12.1	event-log get	130
6.12.2	event-log types	131
6.13	File Commands	131
6.13.1	file access-authorize	131
6.13.2	file access-list	132
6.13.3	file access-revoke	132

6.13.4	file replica-failback	133
6.13.5	file replica-failover	133
6.13.6	file replica-order	133
6.13.7	file replica-partners	134
6.13.8	file replica-locations	134
6.13.9	file snapshot-cancel	135
6.13.10	file snapshot-create	135
6.13.11	file snapshot-delete	136
6.13.12	file snapshot-disable	136
6.13.13	file snapshot-enable	136
6.13.14	file snapshot-list	137
6.13.15	file snapshot-order	137
6.13.16	file snapshot-restore	138
6.13.17	file volume-cancel	138
6.13.18	file volume-count	139
6.13.19	file volume-detail	139
6.13.20	file volume-duplicate	139
6.13.21	file volume-list	140
6.13.22	file volume-modify	141
6.13.23	file volume-order	141
6.13.24	file volume-limits	142
6.13.25	file volume-refresh	142
6.13.26	file volume-convert	143
6.13.27	file snapshot-schedule-list	143
6.13.28	file volume-refresh	143
6.13.29	file volume-convert	143
6.13.30	file volume-set-note	144
6.13.31	file disaster-recovery-failover	144
6.14	Firewall Management	145
6.14.1	firewall add	145
6.14.2	firewall cancel	145
6.14.3	firewall detail	145
6.14.4	firewall edit	146
6.14.5	firewall list	146
6.15	Global IP Addresses	146
6.15.1	globalip assign	146
6.15.2	globalip cancel	146
6.15.3	globalip create	147
6.15.4	globalip list	147
6.15.5	globalip unassign	147
6.16	Interacting with Hardware	148
6.16.1	hardware bandwidth	148
6.16.2	hardware cancel-reasons	148
6.16.3	hardware cancel	149
6.16.4	hardware create-options	149
6.16.5	hardware create	149
6.16.6	hardware credentials	151
6.16.7	hardware detail	151
6.16.8	hardware billing	151
6.16.9	hardware edit	152
6.16.10	hardware list	153
6.16.11	hardware power-cycle	154
6.16.12	hardware power-off	154
6.16.13	hardware power-on	154

6.16.14	hardware reboot	154
6.16.15	hardware reload	155
6.16.16	hardware rescue	155
6.16.17	hardware reflash-firmware	156
6.16.18	hardware update-firmware	156
6.16.19	hardware toggle-ipmi	156
6.16.20	hardware ready	157
6.16.21	hardware dns-sync	157
6.16.22	hardware storage	158
6.16.23	hardware guests	158
6.16.24	hardware authorize-storage	158
6.16.25	hardware upgrade	158
6.17	Disk Image Commands	159
6.17.1	image delete	159
6.17.2	image detail	160
6.17.3	image edit	160
6.17.4	image list	160
6.17.5	image import	161
6.17.6	image export	161
6.17.7	image datacenter	162
6.18	Interacting with IPSEC Tunnels	162
6.18.1	ipsec list	163
6.18.2	ipsec detail	163
6.18.3	ipsec update	165
6.18.4	ipsec configure	167
6.18.5	ipsec subnet-add	168
6.18.6	ipsec subnet-remove	169
6.18.7	ipsec translation-add	169
6.18.8	ipsec translation-remove	170
6.18.9	ipsec translation-update	171
6.19	licenses Commands	172
6.19.1	licenses create-options	172
6.19.2	licenses create	172
6.19.3	licenses cancel	172
6.20	LoadBalancers	173
6.20.1	LBaaS Commands	173
6.20.2	NetScaler Commands	179
6.21	NAS Commands	180
6.21.1	nas list	180
6.21.2	nas credentials	180
6.22	Object Storage Commands	180
6.22.1	object-storage accounts	180
6.22.2	object-storage endpoints	181
6.22.3	object-storage credential list	181
6.22.4	object-storage credential limit	181
6.22.5	object-storage credential delete	181
6.22.6	object-storage credential create	182
6.23	Ordering	182
6.23.1	order package-list	182
6.23.2	order package-locations	183
6.23.3	order category-list	183
6.23.4	order item-list	184
6.23.5	order preset-list	185
6.23.6	order place	186

6.23.7	order place <preset>	187
6.23.8	order place <Virtual Server>	187
6.24	Quotes	188
6.24.1	order quote	188
6.24.2	order quote-list	189
6.24.3	order quote-detail	189
6.24.4	order quote-save	189
6.24.5	order place-quote	189
6.25	Lookup	190
6.25.1	order lookup	190
6.26	Reports	191
6.26.1	summary	191
6.26.2	report bandwidth	191
6.27	Security Groups	192
6.27.1	securitygroup list	192
6.27.2	securitygroup detail	192
6.27.3	securitygroup create	192
6.27.4	securitygroup edit	193
6.27.5	securitygroup delete	193
6.27.6	securitygroup rule-list	193
6.27.7	securitygroup rule-add	194
6.27.8	securitygroup rule-edit	195
6.27.9	securitygroup rule-remove	196
6.27.10	securitygroup interface-list	196
6.27.11	securitygroup interface-add	196
6.27.12	securitygroup interface-remove	197
6.27.13	securitygroup event-log	197
6.28	SSH Keys	197
6.28.1	sshkey add	197
6.28.2	sshkey remove	198
6.28.3	sshkey edit	198
6.28.4	sshkey list	199
6.28.5	sshkey print	199
6.29	SSL Certificates	199
6.29.1	ssl add	199
6.29.2	ssl download	200
6.29.3	ssl edit	200
6.29.4	ssl list	201
6.29.5	ssl remove	201
6.30	Subnets	201
6.30.1	subnet cancel	201
6.30.2	subnet create	202
6.30.3	subnet detail	203
6.30.4	subnet edit	203
6.30.5	subnet list	203
6.30.6	subnet lookup	204
6.30.7	subnet edit-ip	204
6.31	Tag Commands	205
6.31.1	tags list	205
6.31.2	tags set	205
6.31.3	tags details	205
6.31.4	tags delete	206
6.31.5	tags taggable	206
6.31.6	tags cleanup	206

6.32	Support Tickets	207
6.32.1	ticket create	207
6.32.2	ticket detail	208
6.32.3	ticket list	208
6.32.4	ticket update	208
6.32.5	ticket upload	209
6.32.6	ticket subjects	209
6.32.7	ticket summary	209
6.32.8	ticket attach	210
6.32.9	ticket detach	210
6.33	Users	210
6.33.1	user list	211
6.33.2	user detail	211
6.33.3	user notifications	212
6.33.4	user permissions	212
6.33.5	user edit-notifications	212
6.33.6	user edit-permissions	212
6.33.7	user edit-details	213
6.33.8	user create	213
6.33.9	user delete	214
6.33.10	user vpn-manual	214
6.33.11	user vpn-subnet	215
6.34	VLANs	215
6.34.1	vlan create	215
6.34.2	vlan detail	216
6.34.3	vlan edit	216
6.34.4	vlan list	217
6.34.5	vlan cancel	217
6.35	Working with Virtual Servers	218
6.35.1	virtual bandwidth	221
6.35.2	virtual cancel	222
6.35.3	virtual capture	222
6.35.4	virtual create	223
6.35.5	virtual create-options	225
6.35.6	virtual dns-sync	225
6.35.7	virtual edit	226
6.35.8	virtual list	227
6.35.9	virtual pause	228
6.35.10	virtual power-on	228
6.35.11	virtual power-off	228
6.35.12	virtual resume	228
6.35.13	virtual rescue	229
6.35.14	virtual reboot	229
6.35.15	virtual ready	229
6.35.16	virtual upgrade	230
6.35.17	virtual usage	230
6.35.18	virtual storage	231
6.35.19	virtual billing	231
6.35.20	virtual detail	232
6.35.21	virtual reload	232
6.35.22	virtual credentials	233
6.35.23	virtual migrate	233
6.35.24	virtual authorize-storage	233
6.35.25	Reserved Capacity	234

6.35.26	Placement Groups	235
7	Contributing	239
7.1	Contribution Guide	239
7.1.1	Code Organization	239
7.1.2	Setting Up A Dev Environment	239
7.1.3	Testing	240
7.1.4	Documentation	241
7.1.5	Style	241
7.1.6	Contributing	241
7.1.7	Developer Resources	241
7.2	Command-Line Interface Developer Guide	241
7.2.1	First Example	242
7.2.2	Arguments	243
7.2.3	Accessing the API	243
7.2.4	Aborting execution	244
7.2.5	Documenting Commands	244
7.2.6	Architecture	245
8	External Links	247
	Python Module Index	249
	Index	251

[API Docs](#) | [GitHub](#) | [Issues](#) | [Pull Requests](#) | [PyPI](#) |

This is the documentation to SoftLayer's Python API Bindings. These bindings use SoftLayer's [XML-RPC](#) interface in order to manage SoftLayer services.

INSTALLATION

1.1 What's Included

When you install softlayer-python you will get the following:

- a python package called 'SoftLayer' (casing is important) available in your python path.
- a command-line client placed in your system path named 'slcli'.

1.2 Using Pip

Install via pip:

```
$ pip install softlayer
```

1.3 Debian/Ubuntu

For Debian “jessie” (currently testing) and Ubuntu 14.04, official system packages are available. **These are typically a couple versions behind so it is recommended to install from pypi if problems are encountered.**

```
$ sudo apt-get install python-softlayer
```

1.4 From Source

The project is developed on GitHub, at <https://github.com/softlayer/softlayer-python>.

Install from source via pip (requires [git](#)):

```
$ pip install git+git://github.com/softlayer/softlayer-python.git
```

You can clone the public repository:

```
$ git clone git@github.com:softlayer/softlayer-python.git
```

Or, Download the [tarball](#):

```
$ curl -OL https://github.com/softlayer/softlayer-python/tarball/master
```

Or, download the [zipball](#):

```
$ curl -OL https://github.com/softlayer/softlayer-python/zipball/master
```

Once you have a copy of the source you can install it with one of the following commands:

```
$ python setup.py install
```

Or:

```
$ pip install .
```

For more information about working with the source, or contributing to the project, please see the [Contribution Guide](#).

CONFIGURATION FILE

The SoftLayer API bindings load your settings from a number of different locations.

- Input directly into `SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(...)`
- Environment variables (`SL_USERNAME`, `SL_API_KEY`)
- Config file locations (`~/.softlayer`, `/etc/softlayer.conf`)
- Or argument (`-C/path/to/config` or `--config=/path/to/config`)

The configuration file is INI-based and requires the `softlayer` section to be present. The only required fields are `username` and `api_key`. You can optionally supply the `endpoint_url` as well. This file is created automatically by the `slcli setup` command detailed here: [Configuration Setup](#).

Config Example

```
[softlayer]
username = username
api_key = oyVmeipYQCNrjVS4rF9bHWV7D75S6pa1fghF1384v7mwRCbHTfuJ8qRORIqoVnha
endpoint_url = https://api.softlayer.com/xmlrpc/v3/
timeout = 40
```

Cloud.ibm.com Config Example

```
[softlayer]
username = apikey
api_key = 123cNyhzg45Ab6789ADyzwR_2LAagNVbySgY73tAQOz1
endpoint_url = https://api.softlayer.com/rest/v3.1/
timeout = 40
```


API DOCUMENTATION

This is the primary API client to make API calls. It deals with constructing and executing XML-RPC calls against the SoftLayer API. Below are some links that will help to use the SoftLayer API.

- [SoftLayer API Documentation](#)
- [Source on GitHub](#)

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(username="username", api_key="api_key")
>>> resp = client.call('Account', 'getObject')
>>> resp['companyName']
'Your Company'
```

3.1 Getting Started

You can pass in your username and api_key when creating a SoftLayer client instance. However, you can also set these in the environmental variables 'SL_USERNAME' and 'SL_API_KEY'.

Creating a client instance by passing in the username/api_key:

```
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(username='YOUR_USERNAME', api_key='YOUR_API_KEY')
↪ )
```

Creating a client instance with environmental variables set:

```
$ export SL_USERNAME=YOUR_USERNAME
$ export SL_API_KEY=YOUR_API_KEY
$ python
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
```

Below is an example of creating a client instance with more options. This will create a client with the private API endpoint (only accessible from the SoftLayer private network) and a timeout of 4 minutes.

```
client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(username='YOUR_USERNAME',
                                          api_key='YOUR_API_KEY',
                                          endpoint_url=SoftLayer.API_PRIVATE_ENDPOINT,
                                          timeout=240)
```

3.2 Managers

For day-to-day operation, most users will find the managers to be the most convenient means for interacting with the API. Managers abstract a lot of the complexities of using the API into classes that provide a simpler interface to various services. These are higher-level interfaces to the SoftLayer API.

```
from SoftLayer import VSManager, Client
client = Client(...)
vs = VSManager(client)
vs.list_instances()
[...]
```

Available managers:

3.2.1 SoftLayer.account

Account manager

license MIT, see License for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager(*client*)

Common functions for getting information from the Account service

Parameters *client* (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

ack_event(*event_id*)

Acknowledge an event. This mostly prevents it from appearing as a notification in the control portal.

Parameters *event_id* (*int*) – Notification_Occurrence_Event ID you want to ack

Returns True on success, Exception otherwise.

static add_event_filter(*_filter*, *event_type*)

Add data to the object filter.

Param *_filter*: event filter.

Param *string event_type*: event type.

cancel_item(*identifier*, *reason*='No longer needed', *note*=None)

Cancels a specific billing item with a reason

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – Billing_Item id
- **reason** (*string*) – A cancellation reason
- **note** (*string*) – Custom note to set when cancelling. Defaults to information about who canceled the item.

Returns bool

get_account_all_billing_orders(*limit*=100, *mask*=None)

Gets all the topLevelBillingItems currently active on the account

Parameters *mask* (*string*) – Object Mask

Returns Billing_Item

get_account_billing_items(*mask*=None)

Gets all the topLevelBillingItems currently active on the account

Parameters **mask** (*string*) – Object Mask

Returns Billing_Item

get_active_account_licenses()

Gets all active account licenses.

Returns Active account Licenses

get_active_virtual_licenses()

Gets all active virtual licenses account.

Returns active virtual licenses account

get_billing_item(*identifier*, *mask=None*)

Gets details about a billing item

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – Billing_Item id
- **mask** (*string*) – Object mask to use.

Returns Billing_Item

get_billing_item_from_invoice(*identifier*, *mask=None*)

Gets details about a billing item of a billing invoice item

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – Billing_Invoice_Item id
- **mask** – Object mask to use.

Returns Billing_Item

get_billing_items(*identifier*)

Gets all topLevelBillingItems from a specific invoice

Parameters **identifier** (*int*) – Invoice Id

Returns Billing_Invoice_Item

get_event(*event_id*)

Gets details about a maintenance event

Parameters **event_id** (*int*) – Notification_Occurrence_Event ID

Returns Notification_Occurrence_Event

get_invoices(*limit=50*, *closed=False*, *get_all=False*)

Gets an accounts invoices.

Parameters

- **limit** (*int*) – Number of invoices to get back in a single call.
- **closed** (*bool*) – If True, will also get CLOSED invoices
- **get_all** (*bool*) – If True, will paginate through invoices until all have been retrieved.

Returns Billing_Invoice

get_item_detail(*identifier*)

Gets details about a billing item

Parameters **identifier** (*int*) – Billing_Item id or Billing_Invoice_Item

Returns Billing_Item

get_network_message_delivery_accounts()

Gets all Network Message delivery accounts.

Returns Network Message delivery accounts

get_routers(*location=None, mask=None*)

Gets all the routers currently active on the account

Parameters

- **mask** (*string*) – Object Mask
- **location** (*string*) – location string

Returns Routers

get_summary()

Gets some basic account information

Returns Account object

get_upcoming_events(*event_type*)

Retrieves a list of Notification_Occurrence_Events that have not ended yet

Param String event_type: notification event type.

Returns SoftLayer_Notification_Occurrence_Event

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

3.2.2 SoftLayer.autoscale

Autoscale manager

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager(*client*)

Manager for interacting with Autoscale instances.

details(*identifier, mask=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::getObject()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group id
- **mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Group objectMask

edit(*identifier, template*)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::editObject()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group id
- **template** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group

get_logs(*identifier, mask=None, object_filter=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::getLogs()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group Id
- **mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Group_Log objectMask
- **object_filter** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Group_Log objectFilter

get_policy(*identifier, mask=None*)Calls `SoftLayer_Scale_Policy::getObject()`**Parameters**

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Policy id
- **mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Policy objectMask

get_virtual_guests(*identifier, mask=None*)Calls `SoftLayer_Scale_Group::getVirtualGuestMembers()`**Parameters**

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group Id
- **mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Member objectMask

list(*mask=None*)Calls `SoftLayer_Account::getScaleGroups()`**Parameters** **mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Group objectMask**scale**(*identifier, amount*)Calls `SoftLayer_Scale_Group::scale()`**Parameters**

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group Id
- **amount** – positive or negative number to scale the group by

scale_to(*identifier, amount*)Calls `SoftLayer_Scale_Group::scaleTo()`**Parameters**

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group Id
- **amount** – number to scale the group to.

3.2.3 SoftLayer.block

Block Storage Manager

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.**class** `SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager(client)`

Manages SoftLayer Block Storage volumes.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/block-storage>**assign_subnets_to_acl**(*access_id, subnet_ids*)

Assigns subnet records to ACL for the access host.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: `slcli block access-list <volume_id>`**Parameters**

- **access_id** (*integer*) – id of the access host
- **subnet_ids** (*list*) – The ids of the subnets to be assigned

Returns Returns int array of assigned subnet ids

authorize_host_to_volume(*volume_id*, *hardware_ids=None*, *virtual_guest_ids=None*,
ip_address_ids=None, *subnet_ids=None*)

Authorizes hosts to Storage Volumes

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The File volume to authorize hosts to
- **hardware_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Hardware ids
- **virtual_guest_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest ids
- **ip_address_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress ids
- **subnet_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet ids. Only use with File volumes.

Returns Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Allowed_Host objects which now have access to the given volume

cancel_block_volume(*volume_id*, *reason='No longer needed'*, *immediate=False*)

Cancels the given block storage volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate_flag** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

cancel_snapshot_space(*volume_id*, *reason='No longer needed'*, *immediate=False*)

Cancels snapshot space for a given volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate_flag** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

cancel_volume(*volume_id*, *reason='No longer needed'*, *immediate=False*)

Cancels the given storage volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate_flag** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

convert_dep_dupe(*volume_id*)

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

Parameters **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume.

create_or_update_lun_id(*volume_id*, *lun_id*)

Set the LUN ID on a volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume

- **lun_id** (*integer*) – LUN ID to set on the volume

Returns a SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Property object

create_snapshot (*volume_id*, *notes*="", ***kwargs*)

Creates a snapshot on the given block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **notes** (*string*) – The notes or “name” to assign the snapshot

Returns Returns the id of the new snapshot

deauthorize_host_to_volume (*volume_id*, *hardware_ids*=None, *virtual_guest_ids*=None, *ip_address_ids*=None, *subnet_ids*=None)

Revokes authorization of hosts to File Storage Volumes

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The File volume to deauthorize hosts to
- **hardware_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Hardware ids
- **virtual_guest_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest ids
- **ip_address_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress ids
- **subnet_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet ids. Only use with File volumes

Returns Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Allowed_Host objects which have access to the given File volume

delete_snapshot (*snapshot_id*)

Deletes the specified snapshot object.

Parameters **snapshot_id** – The ID of the snapshot object to delete.

disable_snapshots (*volume_id*, *schedule_type*)

Disables snapshots for a specific block volume at a given schedule

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **schedule_type** (*string*) – ‘HOURLY’|‘DAILY’|‘WEEKLY’

Returns Returns whether successfully disabled or not

disaster_recovery_failover_to_replicant (*volume_id*, *replicant_id*)

Disaster Recovery Failover to a volume replicant.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **replicant** (*integer*) – ID of replicant to failover to

Returns Returns whether failover to successful or not

enable_snapshots (*volume_id*, *schedule_type*, *retention_count*, *minute*, *hour*, *day_of_week*, ***kwargs*)

Enables snapshots for a specific block volume at a given schedule

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **schedule_type** (*string*) – ‘HOURLY’|‘DAILY’|‘WEEKLY’

- **retention_count** (*integer*) – Number of snapshots to be kept
- **minute** (*integer*) – Minute when to take snapshot
- **hour** (*integer*) – Hour when to take snapshot
- **day_of_week** (*string*) – Day when to take snapshot

Returns Returns whether successfully scheduled or not

failback_from_replicant(*volume_id*)

Failback from a volume replicant.

Parameters **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume

Returns Returns whether failback was successful or not

failover_to_replicant(*volume_id*, *replicant_id*)

Failover to a volume replicant.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **replicant_id** (*integer*) – ID of replicant to failover to

Returns Returns whether failover was successful or not

get_block_volume_access_list(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

get_block_volume_details(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns details about the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns details about the specified volume.

get_block_volume_snapshot_list(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

get_replication_locations(*volume_id*)

Acquires list of the datacenters to which a volume can be replicated.

Parameters **volume_id** – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated

Returns Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage objects

get_replication_partners(*volume_id*)

Acquires list of replicant volumes pertaining to the given volume.

Parameters **volume_id** – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated

Returns Returns an array of SoftLayer_Location objects

get_subnets_in_acl(*access_id*)

Returns a list of subnet records for the access host.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: slcli block access-list <volume_id>

Parameters **access_id** (*integer*) – id of the access host

Returns Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet objects

get_volume_access_list(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

get_volume_count_limits()

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

Returns Returns a list of block volume count limit.

get_volume_details(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns details about the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns details about the specified volume.

get_volume_snapshot_list(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

list_block_volume_limit()

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

Returns Returns a list of block volume count limit.

list_block_volumes(*datacenter=None*, *username=None*, *storage_type=None*, *order=None*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of block volumes.

Parameters

- **datacenter** – Datacenter short name (e.g.: dal09)
- **username** – Name of volume.

- **storage_type** – Type of volume: Endurance or Performance
- **order** – Volume order id.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of block volumes.

list_volume_schedules(*volume_id*)

Lists schedules for a given volume

Parameters **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume

Returns Returns list of schedules assigned to a given volume

order_block_volume(*storage_type, location, size, os_type, iops=None, tier_level=None, snapshot_size=None, service_offering='storage_as_a_service', hourly_billing_flag=False*)

Places an order for a block volume.

Parameters

- **storage_type** – ‘performance’ or ‘endurance’
- **location** – Datacenter in which to order iSCSI volume
- **size** – Size of the desired volume, in GB
- **os_type** – OS Type to use for volume alignment, see help for list
- **iops** – Number of IOPs for a “Performance” order
- **tier_level** – Tier level to use for an “Endurance” order
- **snapshot_size** – The size of optional snapshot space, if snapshot space should also be ordered (None if not ordered)
- **service_offering** – Requested offering package to use in the order (‘storage_as_a_service’, ‘enterprise’, or ‘performance’)
- **hourly_billing_flag** – Billing type, monthly (False) or hourly (True), default to monthly.

order_duplicate_volume(*origin_volume_id, origin_snapshot_id=None, duplicate_size=None, duplicate_iops=None, duplicate_tier_level=None, duplicate_snapshot_size=None, hourly_billing_flag=False, dependent_duplicate=False*)

Places an order for a duplicate volume.

Parameters

- **origin_volume_id** – The ID of the origin volume to be duplicated
- **origin_snapshot_id** – Origin snapshot ID to use for duplication
- **duplicate_size** – Size/capacity for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_iops** – The IOPS per GB for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_tier_level** – Tier level for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_snapshot_size** – Snapshot space size for the duplicate
- **hourly_billing_flag** – Billing type, monthly (False) or hourly (True), default to monthly.

Returns Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_modified_volume(*volume_id*, *new_size=None*, *new_iops=None*, *new_tier_level=None*)

Places an order for modifying an existing block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the volume to be modified
- **new_size** – The new size/capacity for the volume
- **new_iops** – The new IOPS for the volume
- **new_tier_level** – The new tier level for the volume

Returns Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_replicant_volume(*volume_id*, *snapshot_schedule*, *location*, *tier=None*, *os_type=None*)

Places an order for a replicant volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated
- **snapshot_schedule** – The primary volume’s snapshot schedule to use for replication
- **location** – The location for the ordered replicant volume
- **tier** – The tier (IOPS per GB) of the primary volume
- **os_type** – The OS type of the primary volume

Returns Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_snapshot_space(*volume_id*, *capacity*, *tier*, *upgrade*, ***kwargs*)

Orders snapshot space for the given block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **capacity** (*integer*) – The capacity to order, in GB
- **tier** (*float*) – The tier level of the block volume, in IOPS per GB
- **upgrade** (*boolean*) – Flag to indicate if this order is an upgrade

Returns Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

refresh_dupe(*volume_id*, *snapshot_id*)

“Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **snapshot_id** (*integer*) – The id of the snapshot

remove_subnets_from_acl(*access_id*, *subnet_ids*)

Removes subnet records from ACL for the access host.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: slcli block access-list <volume_id>

Parameters

- **access_id** (*integer*) – id of the access host
- **subnet_ids** (*list*) – The ids of the subnets to be removed

Returns Returns int array of removed subnet ids

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

restore_from_snapshot(*volume_id, snapshot_id*)

Restores a specific volume from a snapshot

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **snapshot_id** (*integer*) – The id of the restore point

Returns Returns whether succesfully restored or not

set_credential_password(*access_id, password*)

Sets the password for an access host

Parameters

- **access_id** (*integer*) – id of the access host
- **password** (*string*) – password to set

volume_set_note(*volume_id, note*)

Set the notes for an existing block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the volume to be modified
- **note** – the note

Returns Returns true if success

3.2.4 SoftLayer.cdn

CDN Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager(*client*)

Manage Content Delivery Networks in the account.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/cdn> <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/infrastructure/CDN?topic=CDN-about-content-delivery-networks-cdn->

Parameters **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_origin(*unique_id, origin, path, origin_type='server', header=None, port=80, protocol='http', bucket_name=None, file_extensions=None, optimize_for='web', cache_query='include all'*)

Creates an origin path for an existing CDN.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.
- **path** (*str*) – relative path to the domain provided, e.g. “/articles/video”
- **origin** (*str*) – ip address or hostname if origin_type=server, API endpoint for your S3 object storage if origin_type=storage

- **origin_type** (*str*) – it can be ‘server’ or ‘storage’ types.
- **header** (*str*) – the edge server uses the host header to communicate with the origin. It defaults to hostname. (optional)
- **port** (*int*) – the http port number (default: 80)
- **protocol** (*str*) – the protocol of the origin (default: HTTP)
- **bucket_name** (*str*) – name of the available resource
- **file_extensions** (*str*) – file extensions that can be stored in the CDN, e.g. “jpg,png”
- **optimize_for** (*str*) – performance configuration, available options: web, video, and file where:
 - ‘web’ = ‘General web delivery’
 - ‘video’ = ‘Video on demand optimization’
 - ‘file’ = ‘Large file optimization’
- **cache_query** (*str*) – rules with the following formats: ‘include-all’, ‘ignore-all’, ‘include: space separated query-names’, ‘ignore: space separated query-names.’

Returns a CDN origin path object

edit(*identifier*, *header=None*, *http_port=None*, *origin=None*, *respect_headers=None*, *cache=None*, *performance_configuration=None*)

Edit the cdn object.

Parameters

- **identifier** (*string*) – The CDN identifier.
- **header** – The cdn Host header.
- **http_port** – The cdn HTTP port.
- **origin** – The cdn Origin server address.
- **respect_headers** – The cdn Respect headers.
- **cache** – The cdn Cache key optimization.
- **performance_configuration** – The cdn performance configuration.

Returns SoftLayer_Container_Network_CdnMarketplace_Configuration_Mapping[].

property end_date

Retrieve the cdn usage metric end date.

static get_cache_key_query_rule(*cache_type*, *cache*)

Get the cdn object detail.

Parameters

- **cache_type** (*string*) – Cache type.
- **cache** – Cache description.

Returns string value.

get_cdn(*unique_id*, ***kwargs*)

Retrieves the information about the CDN account object.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.

- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – header-level option (mask)

Returns The CDN object

get_origins(*unique_id*, ****kwargs**)

Retrieves list of origin pull mappings for a specified CDN account.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – header-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns The list of origin paths in the CDN object.

get_usage_metrics(*unique_id*, *history=30*, *frequency='aggregate'*)

Retrieves the cdn usage metrics.

It uses the ‘days’ argument if start_date and end_date are None.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*int*) – The CDN uniqueId from which the usage metrics will be obtained.
- **history** (*int*) – Last N days, default days is 30.
- **frequency** (*str*) – It can be day, week, month and aggregate. The default is “aggregate”.

Returns A Container_Network_CdnMarketplace_Metrics object

list_cdn(****kwargs**)

Lists Content Delivery Networks for the active user.

Parameters ****kwargs** (*dict*) – header-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns The list of CDN objects in the account

purge_content(*unique_id*, *path*)

Purges a URL or path from the CDN.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.
- **path** (*str*) – A string of url or path that should be purged.

Returns A Container_Network_CdnMarketplace_Configuration_Cache_Purge array object

remove_origin(*unique_id*, *path*)

Removes an origin pull mapping with the given origin pull ID.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.
- **path** (*str*) – The origin path to delete.

Returns A string value

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly ‘identifier’ can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

property start_data

Retrieve the cdn usage metric start date.

3.2.5 SoftLayer.dedicatedhost

DH Manager/helpers

license MIT, see License for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager(*client, ordering_manager=None*)
 Manages SoftLayer Dedicated Hosts.

See product information here <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/dedicated>

Parameters

- **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance
- **ordering_manager** (SoftLayer.managers.OrderingManager) – an optional manager to handle ordering. If none is provided, one will be auto initialized.

cancel_guests(*host_id*)

Cancel all guests into the dedicated host immediately.

To cancel an specified guest use the method VSManager.cancel_instance()

Parameters *host_id* – The ID of the dedicated host.

Returns The id, fqdn and status of all guests into a dictionary. The status could be ‘Cancelled’ or an exception message, The dictionary is empty if there isn’t any guest in the dedicated host.

Example:: # Cancel guests of dedicated host id 12345 result = mgr.cancel_guests(12345)

cancel_host(*host_id*)

Cancel a dedicated host immediately, it fails if there are still guests in the host.

Parameters *host_id* – The ID of the dedicated host to be cancelled.

Returns True on success or an exception

Example:: # Cancels dedicated host id 12345 result = mgr.cancel_host(12345)

get_create_options()

Returns valid options for ordering a dedicated host.

get_host(*host_id, **kwargs*)

Get details about a dedicated host.

:param integer : the host ID :returns: A dictionary containing host information.

Example:

```
# Print out host ID 12345.
dh = mgr.get_host(12345)
print dh

# Print out only name and backendRouter for instance 12345
object_mask = "mask[name,backendRouter[id]]"
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
dh = mgr.get_host(12345, mask=mask)
print dh
```

get_router_options(*datacenter=None, flavor=None*)

Returns available backend routers for the dedicated host.

list_guests(*host_id, tags=None, cpus=None, memory=None, hostname=None, domain=None, local_disk=None, nic_speed=None, public_ip=None, private_ip=None, **kwargs*)

Retrieve a list of all virtual servers on the dedicated host.

Example:

```
# Print out a list of instances with 4 cpu cores in the host id 12345.

for vsi in mgr.list_guests(host_id=12345, cpus=4):
    print vsi['fullyQualifiedDomainName'], vsi['primaryIpAddress']

# Using a custom object-mask. Will get ONLY what is specified
object_mask = "mask[hostname,monitoringRobot[robotStatus]]"
for vsi in mgr.list_guests(mask=object_mask, cpus=4):
    print vsi
```

Parameters

- **host_id** (*integer*) – the identifier of dedicated host
- **tags** (*list*) – filter based on list of tags
- **cpus** (*integer*) – filter based on number of CPUS
- **memory** (*integer*) – filter based on amount of memory
- **hostname** (*string*) – filter based on hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – filter based on domain
- **local_disk** (*string*) – filter based on local_disk
- **nic_speed** (*integer*) – filter based on network speed (in MBPS)
- **public_ip** (*string*) – filter based on public ip address
- **private_ip** (*string*) – filter based on private ip address
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns Returns a list of dictionaries representing the matching virtual servers**list_instances**(*tags=None, cpus=None, memory=None, hostname=None, disk=None, datacenter=None, **kwargs*)

Retrieve a list of all dedicated hosts on the account

Parameters

- **tags** (*list*) – filter based on list of tags
- **cpus** (*integer*) – filter based on number of CPUS
- **memory** (*integer*) – filter based on amount of memory
- **hostname** (*string*) – filter based on hostname

- **disk** (*string*) – filter based on disk
- **datacenter** (*string*) – filter based on datacenter
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns Returns a list of dictionaries representing the matching dedicated host.

place_order(*hostname, domain, location, flavor, hourly, router=None*)

Places an order for a dedicated host.

See `get_create_options()` for valid arguments.

Parameters

- **hostname** (*string*) – server hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – server domain name
- **location** (*string*) – location (datacenter) name
- **hourly** (*boolean*) – True if using hourly pricing (default). False for monthly.
- **router** (*int*) – an optional value for selecting a backend router

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

verify_order(*hostname, domain, location, hourly, flavor, router=None*)

Verifies an order for a dedicated host.

See `place_order()` for a list of available options.

3.2.6 SoftLayer.dns

DNS Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class `SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager`(*client*)

Manage SoftLayer DNS.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/dns>

Parameters **client** (`SoftLayer.API.BaseClient`) – the client instance

create_record(*zone_id, record, record_type, data, ttl=60*)

Create a resource record on a domain.

Parameters

- **id** (*integer*) – the zone's ID
- **record** – the name of the record to add
- **record_type** – the type of record (A, AAAA, CNAME, TXT, etc.)
- **data** – the record's value
- **ttl** (*integer*) – the TTL or time-to-live value (default: 60)

create_record_mx(*zone_id, record, data, ttl=60, priority=10*)

Create a mx resource record on a domain.

Parameters

- **id** (*integer*) – the zone’s ID
- **record** – the name of the record to add
- **data** – the record’s value
- **ttl** (*integer*) – the TTL or time-to-live value (default: 60)
- **priority** (*integer*) – the priority of the target host

create_record_ptr(*record, data, ttl=60*)

Create a reverse record.

Parameters

- **record** – the public ip address of device for which you would like to manage reverse DNS.
- **data** – the record’s value
- **ttl** (*integer*) – the TTL or time-to-live value (default: 60)

create_record_srv(*zone_id, record, data, protocol, port, service, ttl=60, priority=20, weight=10*)

Create a resource record on a domain.

Parameters

- **id** (*integer*) – the zone’s ID
- **record** – the name of the record to add
- **data** – the record’s value
- **protocol** (*string*) – the protocol of the service, usually either TCP or UDP.
- **port** (*integer*) – the TCP or UDP port on which the service is to be found.
- **service** (*string*) – the symbolic name of the desired service.
- **ttl** (*integer*) – the TTL or time-to-live value (default: 60)
- **priority** (*integer*) – the priority of the target host (default: 20)
- **weight** (*integer*) – relative weight for records with same priority (default: 10)

create_zone(*zone, serial=None*)

Create a zone for the specified zone.

Parameters

- **zone** – the zone name to create
- **serial** – serial value on the zone (default: `strftime('%Y%m%d01')`)

delete_record(*record_id*)

Delete a resource record by its ID.

Parameters **id** (*integer*) – the record’s ID

delete_zone(*zone_id*)

Delete a zone by its ID.

Parameters **zone_id** (*integer*) – the zone ID to delete

dump_zone(zone_id)

Retrieve a zone dump in BIND format.

Parameters **id** (*integer*) – The zone ID to dump

edit_record(record)

Update an existing record with the options provided.

The provided dict must include an 'id' key and value corresponding to the record that should be updated.

Parameters **record** (*dict*) – the record to update

edit_zone(zone)

Update an existing zone with the options provided.

The provided dict must include an 'id' key and value corresponding to the zone that should be updated.

Parameters **zone** (*dict*) – the zone to update

get_record(record_id)

Get a DNS record.

Parameters **id** (*integer*) – the record's ID

get_records(zone_id, ttl=None, data=None, host=None, record_type=None)

List, and optionally filter, records within a zone.

Parameters

- **zone** – the zone name in which to search.
- **ttl** (*int*) – time in seconds
- **data** (*str*) – the records data
- **host** (*str*) – record's host
- **record_type** (*str*) – the type of record

Returns A list of dictionaries representing the matching records within the specified zone.

get_zone(zone_id, records=True)

Get a zone and its records.

Parameters **zone** – the zone name

Returns A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified zone.

list_zones(kwargs)**

Retrieve a list of all DNS zones.

Parameters ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns A list of dictionaries representing the matching zones.

resolve_ids(identifier)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

sync_host_record(zone_id, hostname, ip_address, record_type='a', ttl=7200)

For a given zone_id, will set hostname's A record to ip_address

Parameters

- **zone_id** (*integer*) – The zone id for the domain
- **hostname** (*string*) – host part of the record
- **ip_address** (*string*) – data part of the record
- **ttl** (*integer*) – TTL for the record
- **record_type** (*string*) – ‘a’ or ‘aaaa’

sync_ptr_record(*ptr_domains, ip_address, fqdn, ttl=7200*)
Sync PTR record.

Parameters

- **ptr_domains** (*dict*) – result from SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest.getReverseDomainRecords or SoftLayer_Hardware_Server.getReverseDomainRecords
- **ip_address** (*string*) – ip address to sync with
- **fqdn** (*string*) – Fully Qualified Domain Name
- **ttl** (*integer*) – TTL for the record

3.2.7 SoftLayer.email

Email manager

license MIT, see License for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.email.**EmailManager**(*client*)
Common functions for getting information from the email service

Parameters **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

editObject(*identifier, username=None, password=None*)
Edit email delivery account related details.

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – The ID of the email account
- **username** (*string*) – username of the email account.
- **email** (*string*) – email of the email account.
- **password** (*string*) – password of the email account to be updated to.

get_account_overview(*identifier*)
Gets all the Network Message Delivery Account Overview

Returns Network Message Delivery Account overview

get_instance(*identifier*)
Gets the Network_Message_Delivery_Email_Sendgrid instance

Returns Network_Message_Delivery_Email_Sendgrid

get_statistics(*identifier, days=30*)
gets statistics from email accounts

Days range number

Returns statistics Network Message Delivery Account

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

update_email(*identifier, email*)

Edit email address delivery account .

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – The ID of the email account
- **email** (*string*) – email of the email account.

3.2.8 SoftLayer.event_log

Network Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.event_log.**EventManager**(*client*)

Provides an interface for the SoftLayer Event Log Service.

See product information here: http://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Event_Log

static build_filter(*date_min=None, date_max=None, obj_event=None, obj_id=None, obj_type=None, utc_offset=None*)

Returns a query filter that can be passed into EventLogManager.get_event_logs

Parameters

- **date_min** (*string*) – Lower bound date in MM/DD/YYYY format
- **date_max** (*string*) – Upper bound date in MM/DD/YYYY format
- **obj_event** (*string*) – The name of the events we want to filter by
- **obj_id** (*int*) – The id of the event we want to filter by
- **obj_type** (*string*) – The type of event we want to filter by
- **utc_offset** (*string*) – The UTC offset we want to use when converting date_min and date_max. (default '+0000')

Returns dict: The generated query filter

get_event_log_types()

Returns a list of event log types

Returns List of event log types

get_event_logs(*request_filter=None, log_limit=20, iterator=True*)

Returns a list of event logs

Example:

```
event_mgr = SoftLayer.EventLogManager(env.client)
request_filter = event_mgr.build_filter(date_min="01/01/2019", date_max="02/01/
↪2019")
logs = event_mgr.get_event_logs(request_filter)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
for log in logs:
    print("Event Name: {}".format(log['eventName']))
```

Parameters

- **request_filter** (*dict*) – filter dict
- **log_limit** (*int*) – number of results to get in one API call
- **iterator** (*bool*) – False will only make one API call for log_limit results. True will keep making API calls until all logs have been retrieved. There may be a lot of these.

Returns List of event logs. If iterator=True, will return a python generator object instead.

3.2.9 SoftLayer.file

File Storage Manager

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.file.**FileStorageManager**(*client*)

Manages file Storage volumes.

authorize_host_to_volume(*volume_id, hardware_ids=None, virtual_guest_ids=None, ip_address_ids=None, subnet_ids=None*)

Authorizes hosts to Storage Volumes

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The File volume to authorize hosts to
- **hardware_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Hardware ids
- **virtual_guest_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest ids
- **ip_address_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress ids
- **subnet_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet ids. Only use with File volumes.

Returns Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Allowed_Host objects which now have access to the given volume

cancel_file_volume(*volume_id, reason='No longer needed', immediate=False*)

Cancels the given file storage volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

cancel_snapshot_space(*volume_id, reason='No longer needed', immediate=False*)

Cancels snapshot space for a given volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate_flag** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

cancel_volume(*volume_id*, *reason*='No longer needed', *immediate*=False)

Cancels the given storage volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate_flag** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

convert_dep_dupe(*volume_id*)

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

Parameters **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume.

create_snapshot(*volume_id*, *notes*='', ***kwargs*)

Creates a snapshot on the given block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **notes** (*string*) – The notes or “name” to assign the snapshot

Returns Returns the id of the new snapshot

deauthorize_host_to_volume(*volume_id*, *hardware_ids*=None, *virtual_guest_ids*=None, *ip_address_ids*=None, *subnet_ids*=None)

Revokes authorization of hosts to File Storage Volumes

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The File volume to deauthorize hosts to
- **hardware_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Hardware ids
- **virtual_guest_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest ids
- **ip_address_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress ids
- **subnet_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet ids. Only use with File volumes

Returns Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Allowed_Host objects which have access to the given File volume

delete_snapshot(*snapshot_id*)

Deletes the specified snapshot object.

Parameters **snapshot_id** – The ID of the snapshot object to delete.

disable_snapshots(*volume_id*, *schedule_type*)

Disables snapshots for a specific block volume at a given schedule

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **schedule_type** (*string*) – ‘HOURLY’|‘DAILY’|‘WEEKLY’

Returns Returns whether successfully disabled or not

disaster_recovery_failover_to_replicant(*volume_id*, *replicant_id*)

Disaster Recovery Failover to a volume replicant.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume

- **replicant** (*integer*) – ID of replicant to failover to

Returns Returns whether failover to successful or not

enable_snapshots(*volume_id, schedule_type, retention_count, minute, hour, day_of_week, **kwargs*)

Enables snapshots for a specific block volume at a given schedule

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **schedule_type** (*string*) – ‘HOURLY’|‘DAILY’|‘WEEKLY’
- **retention_count** (*integer*) – Number of snapshots to be kept
- **minute** (*integer*) – Minute when to take snapshot
- **hour** (*integer*) – Hour when to take snapshot
- **day_of_week** (*string*) – Day when to take snapshot

Returns Returns whether successfully scheduled or not

failback_from_replicant(*volume_id*)

Failback from a volume replicant.

Parameters **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume

Returns Returns whether failback was successful or not

failover_to_replicant(*volume_id, replicant_id*)

Failover to a volume replicant.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **replicant_id** (*integer*) – ID of replicant to failover to

Returns Returns whether failover was successful or not

get_file_volume_access_list(*volume_id, **kwargs*)

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

get_file_volume_details(*volume_id, **kwargs*)

Returns details about the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns details about the specified volume.

get_file_volume_snapshot_list(*volume_id, **kwargs*)

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.

- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

get_replication_locations(*volume_id*)

Acquires list of the datacenters to which a volume can be replicated.

Parameters **volume_id** – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated

Returns Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage objects

get_replication_partners(*volume_id*)

Acquires list of replicant volumes pertaining to the given volume.

Parameters **volume_id** – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated

Returns Returns an array of SoftLayer_Location objects

get_volume_access_list(*volume_id*, ****kwargs**)

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.

- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

get_volume_count_limits()

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

Returns Returns a list of block volume count limit.

get_volume_details(*volume_id*, ****kwargs**)

Returns details about the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.

- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns details about the specified volume.

get_volume_snapshot_list(*volume_id*, ****kwargs**)

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.

- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

list_file_volume_limit()

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

Returns Returns a list of block volume count limit.

list_file_volumes(*datacenter=None*, *username=None*, *storage_type=None*, *order=None*, ****kwargs**)

Returns a list of file volumes.

Parameters

- **datacenter** – Datacenter short name (e.g.: dal09)

- **username** – Name of volume.

- **storage_type** – Type of volume: Endurance or Performance
- **order** – Volume order id.
- **kwargs** –

Returns Returns a list of file volumes.

list_volume_schedules(*volume_id*)

Lists schedules for a given volume

Parameters **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume

Returns Returns list of schedules assigned to a given volume

order_duplicate_volume(*origin_volume_id*, *origin_snapshot_id=None*, *duplicate_size=None*,
duplicate_iops=None, *duplicate_tier_level=None*,
duplicate_snapshot_size=None, *hourly_billing_flag=False*,
dependent_duplicate=False)

Places an order for a duplicate volume.

Parameters

- **origin_volume_id** – The ID of the origin volume to be duplicated
- **origin_snapshot_id** – Origin snapshot ID to use for duplication
- **duplicate_size** – Size/capacity for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_iops** – The IOPS per GB for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_tier_level** – Tier level for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_snapshot_size** – Snapshot space size for the duplicate
- **hourly_billing_flag** – Billing type, monthly (False) or hourly (True), default to monthly.

Returns Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_file_volume(*storage_type*, *location*, *size*, *iops=None*, *tier_level=None*, *snapshot_size=None*,
service_offering='storage_as_a_service', *hourly_billing_flag=False*)

Places an order for a file volume.

Parameters

- **storage_type** – ‘performance’ or ‘endurance’
- **location** – Name of the datacenter in which to order the volume
- **size** – Size of the desired volume, in GB
- **iops** – Number of IOPs for a “Performance” order
- **tier_level** – Tier level to use for an “Endurance” order
- **snapshot_size** – The size of optional snapshot space, if snapshot space should also be ordered (None if not ordered)
- **service_offering** – Requested offering package to use in the order (‘storage_as_a_service’, ‘enterprise’, or ‘performance’)
- **hourly_billing_flag** – Billing type, monthly (False) or hourly (True), default to monthly.

order_modified_volume(*volume_id*, *new_size=None*, *new_iops=None*, *new_tier_level=None*)

Places an order for modifying an existing block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the volume to be modified
- **new_size** – The new size/capacity for the volume
- **new_iops** – The new IOPS for the volume
- **new_tier_level** – The new tier level for the volume

Returns Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_replicant_volume(*volume_id, snapshot_schedule, location, tier=None, os_type=None*)

Places an order for a replicant volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated
- **snapshot_schedule** – The primary volume’s snapshot schedule to use for replication
- **location** – The location for the ordered replicant volume
- **tier** – The tier (IOPS per GB) of the primary volume
- **os_type** – The OS type of the primary volume

Returns Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_snapshot_space(*volume_id, capacity, tier, upgrade, **kwargs*)

Orders snapshot space for the given block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **capacity** (*integer*) – The capacity to order, in GB
- **tier** (*float*) – The tier level of the block volume, in IOPS per GB
- **upgrade** (*boolean*) – Flag to indicate if this order is an upgrade

Returns Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

refresh_dupe(*volume_id, snapshot_id*)

“Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **snapshot_id** (*integer*) – The id of the snapshot

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly ‘identifier’ can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

restore_from_snapshot(*volume_id, snapshot_id*)

Restores a specific volume from a snapshot

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **snapshot_id** (*integer*) – The id of the restore point

Returns Returns whether successfully restored or not

volume_set_note(*volume_id*, *note*)

Set the notes for an existing block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the volume to be modified
- **note** – the note

Returns Returns true if success

3.2.10 SoftLayer.firewall

Firewall Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager(*client*)

Manages SoftLayer firewalls

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/network-security>

Parameters **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_standard_firewall(*server_id*, *is_virt=True*)

Creates a firewall for the specified virtual/hardware server.

Parameters

- **server_id** (*int*) – The ID of the server to create the firewall for
- **is_virt** (*bool*) – If true, will create the firewall for a virtual server, otherwise for a hardware server.

Returns A dictionary containing the standard virtual server firewall order

add_vlan_firewall(*vlan_id*, *ha_enabled=False*)

Creates a firewall for the specified vlan.

Parameters

- **vlan_id** (*int*) – The ID of the vlan to create the firewall for
- **ha_enabled** (*bool*) – If True, an HA firewall will be created

Returns A dictionary containing the VLAN firewall order

cancel_firewall(*firewall_id*, *dedicated=False*)

Cancels the specified firewall.

Parameters

- **firewall_id** (*int*) – Firewall ID to be cancelled.
- **dedicated** (*bool*) – If true, the firewall instance is dedicated, otherwise, the firewall instance is shared.

edit_dedicated_fwl_rules(*firewall_id*, *rules*)

Edit the rules for dedicated firewall.

Parameters

- **firewall_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID of the dedicated firewall

- **rules** (*list*) – the rules to be pushed on the firewall as defined by SoftLayer_Network_Firewall_Update_Request_Rule

edit_standard_fw_rules(*firewall_id, rules*)

Edit the rules for standard firewall.

Parameters

- **firewall_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID of the standard firewall
- **rules** (*list*) – the rules to be pushed on the firewall as defined by SoftLayer_Network_Firewall_Update_Request_Rule

get_dedicated_fw_rules(*firewall_id*)

Get the rules of a dedicated firewall.

Parameters **firewall_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID of the dedicated firewall

Returns A list of the rules.

get_dedicated_package(*ha_enabled=False*)

Retrieves the dedicated firewall package.

Parameters **ha_enabled** (*bool*) – True if HA is to be enabled on the firewall False for No HA

Returns A dictionary containing the dedicated virtual server firewall package

get_firewalls()

Returns a list of all firewalls on the account.

Returns A list of firewalls on the current account.

get_instance(*firewall_id, mask=None*)

Get the firewall information

Parameters **firewall_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID of the standard firewall

get_standard_fw_rules(*firewall_id*)

Get the rules of a standard firewall.

Parameters **firewall_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID of the standard firewall

Returns A list of the rules.

get_standard_package(*server_id, is_virt=True*)

Retrieves the standard firewall package for the virtual server.

Parameters

- **server_id** (*int*) – The ID of the server to create the firewall for
- **is_virt** (*bool*) – True if the ID provided is for a virtual server, False for a server

Returns A dictionary containing the standard virtual server firewall package

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

`SoftLayer.managers.firewall.has_firewall(vlan)`

Helper to determine whether or not a VLAN has a firewall.

Parameters **vlan** (*dict*) – A dictionary representing a VLAN

Returns True if the VLAN has a firewall, false if it doesn't.

3.2.11 SoftLayer.hardware

Hardware Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.hardware.**HardwareManager**(client, ordering_manager=None)
Manage SoftLayer hardware servers.

Example:

```
# Initialize the Manager.
# env variables. These can also be specified in ~/.softlayer,
# or passed directly to SoftLayer.Client()
# SL_USERNAME = YOUR_USERNAME
# SL_API_KEY = YOUR_API_KEY
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.Client()
mgr = SoftLayer.HardwareManager(client)
```

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/bare-metal-servers>

Parameters

- **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance
- **ordering_manager** (SoftLayer.managers.OrderingManager) – an optional manager to handle ordering. If none is provided, one will be auto initialized.

authorize_storage(hardware_id, username_storage)
Authorize File or Block Storage to a Hardware Server.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (int) – Hardware server id.
- **username_storage** (string) – Storage username.

Returns bool.

cancel_hardware(hardware_id, reason='unneeded', comment='', immediate=False)
Cancels the specified dedicated server.

Example:

```
# Cancels hardware id 1234
result = mgr.cancel_hardware(hardware_id=1234)
```

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (int) – The ID of the hardware to be cancelled.
- **reason** (string) – The reason code for the cancellation. This should come from `get_cancellation_reasons()`.
- **comment** (string) – An optional comment to include with the cancellation.
- **immediate** (bool) – If set to True, will automatically update the cancelation ticket to request the resource be reclaimed asap. This request still has to be reviewed by a human

Returns True on success or an exception

change_port_speed(*hardware_id*, *public*, *speed*, *redundant=None*)

Allows you to change the port speed of a server's NICs.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*int*) – The ID of the server
- **public** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate which interface to change. True (default) means the public interface. False indicates the private interface.
- **speed** (*int*) – The port speed to set.

Warning: A port speed of 0 will disable the interface.

Example:

```
#Change the Public interface to 10Mbps on instance 12345
result = mgr.change_port_speed(hardware_id=12345,
                               public=True, speed=10)
# result will be True or an Exception
```

edit(*hardware_id*, *userdata=None*, *hostname=None*, *domain=None*, *notes=None*, *tags=None*)

Edit hostname, domain name, notes, user data of the hardware.

Parameters set to None will be ignored and not attempted to be updated.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to edit
- **userdata** (*string*) – user data on the hardware to edit. If none exist it will be created
- **hostname** (*string*) – valid hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – valid domain name
- **notes** (*string*) – notes about this particular hardware
- **tags** (*string*) – tags to set on the hardware as a comma separated list. Use the empty string to remove all tags.

Example:

```
# Change the hostname on instance 12345 to 'something'
result = mgr.edit(hardware_id=12345 , hostname="something")
#result will be True or an Exception
```

get_bandwidth_allocation(*instance_id*)

Combines getBandwidthAllotmentDetail() and getBillingCycleBandwidthUsage()

get_bandwidth_data(*instance_id*, *start_date=None*, *end_date=None*, *direction=None*, *rollup=3600*)

Gets bandwidth data for a server

Will get averaged bandwidth data for a given time period. If you use a rollup over 3600 be aware that the API will bump your start/end date to align with how data is stored. For example if you have a rollup of 86400 your start_date will be bumped to 00:00. If you are not using a time in the start/end date fields, this won't really matter.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Hardware Id to get data for
- **start_date** (*date*) – Date to start pulling data for.
- **end_date** (*date*) – Date to finish pulling data for
- **direction** (*string*) – Can be either ‘public’, ‘private’, or None for both.
- **rollup** (*int*) – 300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds to average data over.

get_cancellation_reasons()

Returns a dictionary of valid cancellation reasons.

These can be used when cancelling a dedicated server via [cancel_hardware\(\)](#).

get_components(*hardware_id*, *mask=None*, *filter_component=None*)

Get details about a hardware components.

Parameters **hardware_id** (*int*) – the instance ID

Returns A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified components.

get_create_options(*datacenter=None*)

Returns valid options for ordering hardware.

Parameters **datacenter** (*string*) – short name, like dal09

get_hard_drives(*instance_id*)

Returns the hardware server hard drives.

Parameters **instance_id** (*int*) – Id of the hardware server

get_hardware(*hardware_id*, ***kwargs*)

Get details about a hardware device.

Parameters **id** (*integer*) – the hardware ID

Returns A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified server.

Example:

```
object_mask = "mask[id,networkVlans[vlanNumber]]"
# Object masks are optional
result = mgr.get_hardware(hardware_id=1234,mask=object_mask)
```

get_hardware_guests(*instance_id*)

Returns the hardware server guests.

Parameters **instance_id** (*int*) – Id of the hardware server.

get_hardware_item_prices(*location*)

Returns the hardware server item prices by location.

Parameters **location** (*string*) – location to get the item prices.

get_instance(*instance_id*)

Get details about a hardware server instance.

Parameters **instance_id** (*int*) – the instance ID

Returns A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified instance.

get_maintenance_windows_detail(*location_id*)

Get the disks prices to be added or upgraded.

Parameters **location_id** (*int*) – Hardware Server location id.

Return int

get_storage_credentials(*instance_id*)

Returns the hardware server storage credentials.

Parameters *instance_id* (*int*) – Id of the hardware server

get_storage_details(*instance_id*, *nas_type*)

Returns the hardware server attached network storage.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Id of the hardware server
- **nas_type** – storage type.

get_tracking_id(*instance_id*)

Returns the Metric Tracking Object Id for a hardware server

Parameters *instance_id* (*int*) – Id of the hardware server

list_hardware(*tags=None*, *cpus=None*, *memory=None*, *hostname=None*, *domain=None*, *datacenter=None*, *nic_speed=None*, *public_ip=None*, *private_ip=None*, ***kwargs*)

List all hardware (servers and bare metal computing instances).

param list tags filter based on tags

param integer cpus filter based on number of CPUS

param integer memory filter based on amount of memory in gigabytes

param string hostname filter based on hostname

param string domain filter based on domain

param string datacenter filter based on datacenter

param integer nic_speed filter based on network speed (in MBPS)

param string public_ip filter based on public ip address

param string private_ip filter based on private ip address

param dict **kwargs response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

returns Returns a list of dictionaries representing the matching hardware. This list will contain both dedicated servers and bare metal computing instances

Example:

```
# Using a custom object-mask. Will get ONLY what is specified
# These will stem from the SoftLayer_Hardware_Server datatype
object_mask = "mask[hostname,monitoringRobot[robotStatus]]"
result = mgr.list_hardware(mask=object_mask)
```

place_order(***kwargs*)

Places an order for a piece of hardware.

See `get_create_options()` for valid arguments.

Parameters

- **size** (*string*) – server size name or presetId
- **hostname** (*string*) – server hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – server domain name

- **location** (*string*) – location (datacenter) name
- **os** (*string*) – operating system name
- **port_speed** (*int*) – Port speed in Mbps
- **ssh_keys** (*list*) – list of ssh key ids
- **post_uri** (*string*) – The URI of the post-install script to run after reload
- **hourly** (*boolean*) – True if using hourly pricing (default). False for monthly.
- **no_public** (*boolean*) – True if this server should only have private interfaces
- **extras** (*list*) – List of extra feature names

reflash_firmware(*hardware_id*, *ipmi=True*, *raid_controller=True*, *bios=True*)

Reflash hardware firmware.

This will cause the server to be unavailable for ~60 minutes. The firmware will not be upgraded but rather reflashed to the version installed.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*int*) – The ID of the hardware to have its firmware reflashed.
- **ipmi** (*bool*) – Reflash the ipmi firmware.
- **raid_controller** (*bool*) – Reflash the raid controller firmware.
- **bios** (*bool*) – Reflash the bios firmware.

Example:

```
# Check the servers active transactions to see progress
result = mgr.reflash_firmware(hardware_id=1234)
```

reload(*hardware_id*, *post_uri=None*, *ssh_keys=None*, *lvm=False*)

Perform an OS reload of a server with its current configuration.

https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_Container_Hardware_Server_Configuration/
:param integer hardware_id: the instance ID to reload :param string post_uri: The URI of the post-install script to run after reload :param list ssh_keys: The SSH keys to add to the root user :param bool lvm: A flag indicating that the provision should use LVM for all logical drives.

rescue(*hardware_id*)

Reboot a server into the a rescue kernel.

Parameters **instance_id** (*integer*) – the server ID to rescue

Example:

```
result = mgr.rescue(1234)
```

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

update_firmware(*hardware_id*, *ipmi=True*, *raid_controller=True*, *bios=True*, *hard_drive=True*)

Update hardware firmware.

This will cause the server to be unavailable for ~20 minutes.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*int*) – The ID of the hardware to have its firmware updated.
- **ipmi** (*bool*) – Update the ipmi firmware.
- **raid_controller** (*bool*) – Update the raid controller firmware.
- **bios** (*bool*) – Update the bios firmware.
- **hard_drive** (*bool*) – Update the hard drive firmware.

Example:

```
# Check the servers active transactions to see progress
result = mgr.update_firmware(hardware_id=1234)
```

upgrade(*instance_id*, *memory=None*, *nic_speed=None*, *drive_controller=None*, *public_bandwidth=None*, *disk=None*, *test=False*)

Upgrades a hardware server instance.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Instance id of the hardware server to be upgraded.
- **memory** (*int*) – Memory size.
- **nic_speed** (*string*) – Network Port Speed data.
- **drive_controller** (*string*) – Drive Controller data.
- **public_bandwidth** (*int*) – Public keyName data.
- **disk** (*list*) – List of disks to add or upgrade Hardware Server.
- **test** (*bool*) – Test option to verify the request.

Returns *bool*

verify_order(***kwargs*)

Verifies an order for a piece of hardware.

See [place_order\(\)](#) for a list of available options.

wait_for_ready(*instance_id*, *limit=14400*, *delay=10*, *pending=False*)

Determine if a Server is ready.

A server is ready when no transactions are running on it.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – The instance ID with the pending transaction
- **limit** (*int*) – The maximum amount of seconds to wait.
- **delay** (*int*) – The number of seconds to sleep before checks. Defaults to 10.

SoftLayer.managers.hardware.find_item_in_package(*cost_key*, *items*, *location_group_id*, *price*)

Find the item in the packages item list.

Will return the item cost.

Parameters

- **cost_key** (*string*) – item cost key hourlyRecurringFee or recurringFee.
- **items** (*list*) – items list.

- **location_group_id** (*int*) – locationGroupId's to get price for.
- **price** – price data.

`SoftLayer.managers.hardware.get_item_price(prices, location_group_id=None)`
Get item prices, optionally for a specific location.

Will return the default pricing information if there isn't any location specific pricing.

Parameters

- **list** (*prices*) – `SoftLayer_Product_Item_Price[]`
- **int** (*location_group_id*) – locationGroupId's to get price for.

3.2.12 SoftLayer.image

Image Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class `SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager(client)`
Manages SoftLayer server images.

See product information here: <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/image-templates>

Parameters **client** (`SoftLayer.API.BaseClient`) – the client instance

add_locations(*image_id, location_names*)
Add available locations to an archive image template.

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image
- **location_names** – Locations for the Image.

delete_image(*image_id*)
Deletes the specified image.

Parameters **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image.

edit(*image_id, name=None, note=None, tag=None*)
Edit image related details.

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image
- **name** (*string*) – Name of the Image.
- **note** (*string*) – Note of the image.
- **tag** (*string*) – Tags of the image to be updated to.

export_image_to_uri(*image_id, uri, ibm_api_key=None*)
Export image into the given object storage

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image
- **uri** (*string*) – The URI for object storage of the format `swift://<objectStorageAccount>@<cluster>/<container>/<objectPath>` or `cos://<regionName>/<bucketName>/<objectPath>` if using IBM Cloud Object Storage

- **ibm_api_key** (*string*) – Ibm Api Key needed to communicate with IBM Cloud Object Storage

get_image(*image_id*, ***kwargs*)

Get details about an image.

Parameters

- **image** (*int*) – The ID of the image.
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

get_locations_list(*image_id*, *location_names*)

Converts a list of location names to a list of locations.

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image.
- **location_names** (*list*) – A list of location names strings.

Returns A list of locations associated with the given location names in the image.

get_storage_locations(*image_id*)

Get available locations for public image storage.

Parameters **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image

import_image_from_uri(*name*, *uri*, *os_code=None*, *note=None*, *ibm_api_key=None*, *root_key_crn=None*, *wrapped_dek=None*, *cloud_init=False*, *byol=False*, *is_encrypted=False*)

Import a new image from object storage.

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – Name of the new image
- **uri** (*string*) – The URI for an object storage object (.vhd/.iso file) of the format: swift://<objectStorageAccount>@<cluster>/<container>/<objectPath> or (.vhd/.iso/.raw file) of the format: cos://<regionName>/<bucketName>/<objectPath> if using IBM Cloud Object Storage
- **os_code** (*string*) – The reference code of the operating system
- **note** (*string*) – Note to add to the image
- **ibm_api_key** (*string*) – Ibm Api Key needed to communicate with ICOS and your KMS
- **root_key_crn** (*string*) – CRN of the root key in your KMS. Go to your KMS (Key Protect or Hyper Protect) provider to get the CRN for your root key. An example CRN: crn:v1:bluemix:public:hs-crypto:us-south:acctID:serviceID:key:keyID' Used only when is_encrypted is True.
- **wrapped_dek** (*string*) – Wrapped Data Encryption Key provided by your KMS. Used only when is_encrypted is True.
- **cloud_init** (*boolean*) – Specifies if image is cloud-init
- **byol** (*boolean*) – Specifies if image is bring your own license
- **is_encrypted** (*boolean*) – Specifies if image is encrypted

list_private_images(*guid=None*, *name=None*, ***kwargs*)

List all private images.

Parameters

- **guid** (*string*) – filter based on GUID

- **name** (*string*) – filter based on name
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

list_public_images(*guid=None, name=None, **kwargs*)

List all public images.

Parameters

- **guid** (*string*) – filter based on GUID
- **name** (*string*) – filter based on name
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

remove_locations(*image_id, location_names*)

Remove available locations from an archive image template.

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image
- **location_names** – Locations for the Image.

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly ‘identifier’ can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

3.2.13 SoftLayer.ipsec

IPSec VPN Manager

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.**IPSECManager**(*client*)

Manage SoftLayer IPSEC VPN tunnel contexts.

This provides helpers to manage IPSEC contexts, private and remote subnets, and NAT translations.

Parameters

- **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance
- **account** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – account service client
- **context** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – tunnel context client
- **customer_subnet** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – remote subnet client

add_internal_subnet(*context_id, subnet_id*)

Add an internal subnet to a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the internal subnet.

Return bool True if internal subnet addition was successful.

add_remote_subnet(*context_id, subnet_id*)

Adds a remote subnet to a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the remote subnet.

Return bool True if remote subnet addition was successful.

add_service_subnet(*context_id, subnet_id*)

Adds a service subnet to a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the service subnet.

Return bool True if service subnet addition was successful.

apply_configuration(*context_id*)

Requests network configuration for a tunnel context.

Parameters **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.

Return bool True if the configuration request was successfully queued.

create_remote_subnet(*account_id, identifier, cidr*)

Creates a remote subnet on the given account.

Parameters

- **account_id** (*string*) – The account identifier.
- **identifier** (*string*) – The network identifier of the remote subnet.
- **cidr** (*string*) – The CIDR value of the remote subnet.

Return dict Mapping of properties for the new remote subnet.

create_translation(*context_id, static_ip, remote_ip, notes*)

Creates an address translation on a tunnel context/

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **static_ip** (*string*) – The IP address value representing the internal side of the translation entry,
- **remote_ip** (*string*) – The IP address value representing the remote side of the translation entry,
- **notes** (*string*) – The notes to supply with the translation entry,

Return dict Mapping of properties for the new translation entry.

delete_remote_subnet(*subnet_id*)

Deletes a remote subnet from the current account.

Parameters **subnet_id** (*string*) – The id-value representing the remote subnet.

Return bool True if subnet deletion was successful.

get_translation(*context_id, translation_id*)

Retrieves a translation entry for the given id values.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.

- **translation_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the translation instance.

Return dict Mapping of properties for the translation entry.

Raises *SoftLayerAPIError* – If a translation cannot be found.

get_translations(*context_id*)

Retrieves all translation entries for a tunnel context.

Parameters **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.

Return list(dict) Translations associated with the given context

get_tunnel_context(*context_id*, ***kwargs*)

Retrieves the network tunnel context instance.

Parameters **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.

Return dict Mapping of properties for the tunnel context.

Raises *SoftLayerAPIError* – If a context cannot be found.

get_tunnel_contexts(***kwargs*)

Retrieves network tunnel module context instances.

Return list(dict) Contexts associated with the current account.

remove_internal_subnet(*context_id*, *subnet_id*)

Remove an internal subnet from a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the internal subnet.

Return bool True if internal subnet removal was successful.

remove_remote_subnet(*context_id*, *subnet_id*)

Removes a remote subnet from a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the remote subnet.

Return bool True if remote subnet removal was successful.

remove_service_subnet(*context_id*, *subnet_id*)

Removes a service subnet from a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the service subnet.

Return bool True if service subnet removal was successful.

remove_translation(*context_id*, *translation_id*)

Removes a translation entry from a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **translation_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the translation.

Return bool True if translation entry removal was successful.

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters *identifier* (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

update_translation(*context_id*, *translation_id*, *static_ip=None*, *remote_ip=None*, *notes=None*)

Updates an address translation entry using the given values.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **template** (*dict*) – A key-value mapping of translation properties.
- **static_ip** (*string*) – The static IP address value to update.
- **remote_ip** (*string*) – The remote IP address value to update.
- **notes** (*string*) – The notes value to update.

Return bool True if the update was successful.

update_tunnel_context(*context_id*, *friendly_name=None*, *remote_peer=None*, *preshared_key=None*, *phase1_auth=None*, *phase1_crypto=None*, *phase1_dh=None*, *phase1_key_ttl=None*, *phase2_auth=None*, *phase2_crypto=None*, *phase2_dh=None*, *phase2_forward_secrecy=None*, *phase2_key_ttl=None*)

Updates a tunnel context using the given values.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*string*) – The id-value representing the context.
- **friendly_name** (*string*) – The friendly name value to update.
- **remote_peer** (*string*) – The remote peer IP address value to update.
- **preshared_key** (*string*) – The preshared key value to update.
- **phase1_auth** (*string*) – The phase 1 authentication value to update.
- **phase1_crypto** (*string*) – The phase 1 encryption value to update.
- **phase1_dh** (*string*) – The phase 1 diffie hellman group value to update.
- **phase1_key_ttl** (*string*) – The phase 1 key life value to update.
- **phase2_auth** (*string*) – The phase 2 authentication value to update.
- **phase2_crypto** (*string*) – The phase 2 encryption value to update.
- **phase2_df** (*string*) – The phase 2 diffie hellman group value to update.
- **phase2_forward_secriecy** (*string*) – The phase 2 perfect forward secrecy value to update.
- **phase2_key_ttl** (*string*) – The phase 2 key life value to update.

Return bool True if the update was successful.

3.2.14 SoftLayer.load_balancer

Load Balancer Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager(*client*)

Manages SoftLayer load balancers.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/load-balancer>

Parameters *client* (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_lb_l7_pool(*identifier, pool, members, health, session*)

Creates a new l7 pool for a LBaaS instance

- https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7Pool/createL7Pool/
- <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/infrastructure/loadbalancer-service?topic=loadbalancer-service-api-reference>

Parameters

- **identifier** – UUID of the LBaaS instance
- **SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7Pool** (*pool*) – Description of the pool
- **SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7Member**[] (*members*) – Array of servers with their address, port, weight
- **SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7HealthMonitor** (*monitor*) – A health monitor
- **SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7SessionAffinity** (*session*) – Whether to use affinity

add_lb_listener(*identifier, listener*)

Adds or update a listener to a LBaaS instance

When using this to update a listener, just include the 'listenerUuid' in the listener object See the following for listener configuration options https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancerProtocolConfiguration/

Parameters

- **identifier** – UUID of the LBaaS instance
- **listener** – Object with all listener configurations

add_lb_member(*identifier, service_info*)

Adds a member to a LBaaS instance

https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_Member/deleteLoadBalancerMembers/ :param identifier: UUID of the LBaaS instance :param service_info: datatypes/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancerServerInstanceInfo

cancel_lbaas(*uuid*)

Cancels a LBaaS instance.

https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancer/cancelLoadBalancer/ :param uuid string: UUID of the LBaaS instance to cancel

del_lb_l7_pool(*identifier*)

Deletes a l7 pool

Parameters *identifier* – Id of the L7Pool

delete_lb_member(*identifier*, *member_id*)

Removes a member from a LBaaS instance

https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_Member/

`deleteLoadBalancerMembers/` :param *identifier*: UUID of the LBaaS instance :param *member_id*: Member UUID to remove.

get_adc(*identifier*, *mask=None*)

Returns a netscaler object.

Returns SoftLayer_Network_Application_Delivery_Controller.

get_adcs(*mask=None*)

Returns a list of all netscalers.

Returns SoftLayer_Network_Application_Delivery_Controller[].

get_lb(*identifier*, *mask=None*)

Returns a IBM Cloud LoadBalancer

Returns SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancer

get_lbaas(*mask=None*)

Returns a list of IBM Cloud Loadbalancers

Returns SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancer[]

get_lbaas_by_name(*name*, *mask=None*)

Gets a LBaaS by name.

Parameters

- **name** – Name of the LBaaS instance
- **mask** –

Returns SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancer.

get_lbaas_uuid_id(*identifier*)

Gets a LBaaS uuid, id. Since sometimes you need one or the other.

Parameters **identifier** – either the LB Id, UUID or Name, this function will return UI and LB Id.

Return (uuid, id)

lbaas_order_options()

Gets the options to order a LBaaS instance.

order_lbaas(*datacenter*, *name*, *desc*, *protocols*, *subnet_id*, *public=False*, *verify=False*)

Allows to order a Load Balancer

Parameters

- **datacenter** – Shortname for the SoftLayer datacenter to order in.
- **name** – Identifier for the new LB.
- **desc** – Optional description for the lb.
- **protocols** – https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_Listener/
- **subnet_id** – Id of the subnet for this new LB to live on.
- **public** – Use Public side for the backend.

- **verify** – Don't actually order if True.

remove_lb_listener(*identifier*, *listener*)

Removes a listener to a LBaaS instance

Parameters

- **identifier** – UUID of the LBaaS instance
- **listener** – UUID of the Listener to be removed.

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

update_lb_health_monitors(*uuid*, *checks*)

calls SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_HealthMonitor::updateLoadBalancerHealthMonitors()

- `updateLoadBalancerHealthMonitors`
- `SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancerHealthMonitorConfiguration`

Parameters

- **uuid** – loadBalancerUuid
- **list** (*checks*) – `SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancerHealthMonitorConfiguration[]`

3.2.15 SoftLayer.metadata

Metadata Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class `SoftLayer.managers.metadata.MetadataManager`(*client=None*, *timeout=5*)

Provides an interface for the SoftLayer metadata service.

See product information here: http://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Resource_Metadata

This provides metadata about the resource it is called from. See `METADATA_ATTRIBUTES` for full list of attributes.

Usage:

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
>>> from SoftLayer import MetadataManager
>>> meta = MetadataManager(client)
>>> meta.get('datacenter')
'dal05'
>>> meta.get('fqdn')
'test.example.com'
```

Parameters **client** (`SoftLayer.API.BaseClient`) – the client instance

get(*name*, *param*=None)

Retrieve a metadata attribute.

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – name of the attribute to retrieve. See *attrs*
- **param** – Required parameter for some attributes

private_network(***kwargs*)

Returns details about the private network.

Parameters

- **router** (*boolean*) – True to return router details
- **vlan** (*boolean*) – True to return vlan details
- **vlan_ids** (*boolean*) – True to return vlan_ids

public_network(***kwargs*)

Returns details about the public network.

Parameters

- **router** (*boolean*) – True to return router details
- **vlan** (*boolean*) – True to return vlan details
- **vlan_ids** (*boolean*) – True to return vlan_ids

```
metadata.METADATA_ATTRIBUTES = dict_keys(['backend_mac', 'datacenter', 'datacenter_id',
'domain', 'frontend_mac', 'fqdn', 'hostname', 'id', 'primary_backend_ip', 'primary_ip',
'primary_frontend_ip', 'provision_state', 'router', 'tags', 'user_data', 'user_metadata',
'vlan_ids', 'vlans'])
```

3.2.16 SoftLayer.network

Network Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.network.**NetworkManager**(*client*)

Manage SoftLayer network objects: VLANs, subnets and IPs

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/network>

Parameters **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_global_ip(*version*=4, *test_order*=False)

Adds a global IP address to the account.

Parameters

- **version** (*int*) – Specifies whether this is IPv4 or IPv6
- **test_order** (*bool*) – If true, this will only verify the order.

add_securitygroup_rule(*group_id*, *remote_ip*=None, *remote_group*=None, *direction*=None, *ethertype*=None, *port_max*=None, *port_min*=None, *protocol*=None)

Add a rule to a security group

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group to add this rule to

- **remote_ip** (*str*) – The remote IP or CIDR to enforce the rule on
- **remote_group** (*int*) – The remote security group ID to enforce the rule on
- **direction** (*str*) – The direction to enforce (egress or ingress)
- **ethertype** (*str*) – The ethertype to enforce (IPv4 or IPv6)
- **port_max** (*int*) – The upper port bound to enforce (icmp code if the protocol is icmp)
- **port_min** (*int*) – The lower port bound to enforce (icmp type if the protocol is icmp)
- **protocol** (*str*) – The protocol to enforce (icmp, udp, tcp)

add_securitygroup_rules(*group_id, rules*)

Add rules to a security group

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group to add the rules to
- **rules** (*list*) – The list of rule dictionaries to add

add_subnet(*subnet_type, quantity=None, endpoint_id=None, version=4, test_order=False*)

Orders a new subnet

Parameters

- **subnet_type** (*str*) – Type of subnet to add: private, public, global,static
- **quantity** (*int*) – Number of IPs in the subnet
- **endpoint_id** (*int*) – id for the subnet to be placed into
- **version** (*int*) – 4 for IPv4, 6 for IPv6
- **test_order** (*bool*) – If true, this will only verify the order.

assign_global_ip(*global_ip_id, target*)

Assigns a global IP address to a specified target.

Parameters

- **global_ip_id** (*int*) – The ID of the global IP being assigned
- **target** (*string*) – The IP address to assign

attach_securitygroup_component(*group_id, component_id*)

Attaches a network component to a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **component_id** (*int*) – The ID of the network component to attach

attach_securitygroup_components(*group_id, component_ids*)

Attaches network components to a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **component_ids** (*list*) – The IDs of the network components to attach

cancel_global_ip(*global_ip_id*)

Cancels the specified global IP address.

Parameters **id** (*int*) – The ID of the global IP to be cancelled.

cancel_item(*identifier, cancel_immediately, reason_cancel, customer_note*)

Cancel a billing item immediately, deleting all its data.

Parameters

- **identifier** (*integer*) – the instance ID to cancel
- **reason_cancel** (*string*) – reason cancel

cancel_subnet(*subnet_id*)

Cancels the specified subnet.

Parameters **subnet_id** (*int*) – The ID of the subnet to be cancelled.

create_securitygroup(*name=None, description=None*)

Creates a security group.

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – The name of the security group
- **description** (*string*) – The description of the security group

delete_securitygroup(*group_id*)

Deletes the specified security group.

Parameters **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group

detach_securitygroup_component(*group_id, component_id*)

Detaches a network component from a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **component_id** (*int*) – The ID of the component to detach

detach_securitygroup_components(*group_id, component_ids*)

Detaches network components from a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **component_ids** (*list*) – The IDs of the network components to detach

edit(*instance_id, name=None, note=None, tags=None*)

Edit a vlan.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to edit.
- **name** (*string*) – valid name.
- **note** (*string*) – note about this particular vlan.
- **tags** (*string*) – tags to set on the vlan as a comma separated list. Use the empty string to remove all tags.

Returns bool – True or an Exception

edit_note_subnet(*subnet_id, note*)

Edit the note for this subnet.

Parameters

- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The ID of the subnet.

- **note** (*string*) – The note.

edit_securitygroup(*group_id*, *name=None*, *description=None*)

Edit security group details.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **name** (*string*) – The name of the security group
- **description** (*string*) – The description of the security group

edit_securitygroup_rule(*group_id*, *rule_id*, *remote_ip=None*, *remote_group=None*, *direction=None*, *ethertype=None*, *port_max=None*, *port_min=None*, *protocol=None*)

Edit a security group rule.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group the rule belongs to
- **rule_id** (*int*) – The ID of the rule to edit
- **remote_ip** (*str*) – The remote IP or CIDR to enforce the rule on
- **remote_group** (*int*) – The remote security group ID to enforce the rule on
- **direction** (*str*) – The direction to enforce (egress or ingress)
- **ethertype** (*str*) – The ethertype to enforce (IPv4 or IPv6)
- **port_max** (*str*) – The upper port bound to enforce
- **port_min** (*str*) – The lower port bound to enforce
- **protocol** (*str*) – The protocol to enforce (icmp, udp, tcp)

get_cancel_failure_reasons(*identifier*)

get the reasons why we cannot cancel the VLAN.

Parameters **identifier** (*integer*) – the instance ID

get_event_logs_by_request_id(*request_id*)

Gets all event logs by the given request id

Parameters **request_id** (*string*) – The request id we want to filter on

get_ip_by_address(*ip_address*)

get the ip address object

Parameters **ip_address** (*string*) – the ip address to edit.

get_nas_credentials(*identifier*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of IDs of VLANs which match the given VLAN name.

Parameters **instance_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID

Returns A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified instance.

get_pods(*datacenter=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Network_Pod::getAllObjects()

returns list of all network pods and their routers.

get_securitygroup(*group_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns the information about the given security group.

Parameters **id** (*string*) – The ID for the security group

Returns A diction of information about the security group

get_subnet(*subnet_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns information about a single subnet.

Parameters *id* (*string*) – Either the ID for the subnet or its network identifier

Returns A dictionary of information about the subnet

static get_subnet_item_price(*item*, *subnet_type*, *version*)

Get the subnet specific item price id.

Parameters

- **version** – 4 for IPv4, 6 for IPv6.
- **subnet_type** – Type of subnet to add: private, public, global,static.
- **item** – Subnet item.

get_vlan(*vlan_id*)

Returns information about a single VLAN.

Parameters *id* (*int*) – The unique identifier for the VLAN

Returns A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified VLAN.

ip_lookup(*ip_address*)

Looks up an IP address and returns network information about it.

Parameters **ip_address** (*string*) – An IP address. Can be IPv4 or IPv6

Returns A dictionary of information about the IP

list_global_ips(*version=None*, *identifier=None*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of all global IP address records on the account.

Parameters

- **version** (*int*) – Only returns IPs of this version (4 or 6)
- **identifier** (*string*) – If specified, the list will only contain the global ips matching this network identifier.

list_securitygroup_rules(*group_id*)

List security group rules associated with a security group.

Parameters **group_id** (*int*) – The security group to list rules for

list_securitygroups(***kwargs*)

List security groups.

list_subnets(*identifier=None*, *datacenter=None*, *version=0*, *subnet_type=None*, *network_space=None*, ***kwargs*)

Display a list of all subnets on the account.

This provides a quick overview of all subnets including information about data center residence and the number of devices attached.

Parameters

- **identifier** (*string*) – If specified, the list will only contain the subnet matching this network identifier.
- **datacenter** (*string*) – If specified, the list will only contain subnets in the specified data center.

- **version** (*int*) – Only returns subnets of this version (4 or 6).
- **subnet_type** (*string*) – If specified, it will only returns subnets of this type.
- **network_space** (*string*) – If specified, it will only returns subnets with the given address space label.
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

list_vlans(*datacenter=None, vlan_number=None, name=None, **kwargs*)

Display a list of all VLANs on the account.

This provides a quick overview of all VLANs including information about data center residence and the number of devices attached.

Parameters

- **datacenter** (*string*) – If specified, the list will only contain VLANs in the specified data center.
- **vlan_number** (*int*) – If specified, the list will only contain the VLAN matching this VLAN number.
- **name** (*int*) – If specified, the list will only contain the VLAN matching this VLAN name.
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

remove_securitygroup_rule(*group_id, rule_id*)

Remove a rule from a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **rule_id** (*int*) – The ID of the rule to remove

remove_securitygroup_rules(*group_id, rules*)

Remove rules from a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **rules** (*list*) – The list of IDs to remove

resolve_global_ip_ids(*identifier*)

Resolve global ip ids.

resolve_subnet_ids(*identifier*)

Resolve subnet ids.

resolve_vlan_ids(*identifier*)

Resolve VLAN ids.

set_subnet_ipaddress_note(*identifier, note*)

Set the ip address note of the subnet

Parameters **identifier** (*integer*) – the ip address ID to edit. :param json note: the note to edit.

set_tags(*tags, vlan_id*)

Sets tags on a vlan with a retry decorator

Just calls vlan.setTags, but if it fails from an APIError will retry.

set_tags_subnet(*subnet_id, tags*)

Tag a subnet by passing in one or more tags separated by a comma.

Parameters

- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The ID of the subnet.
- **tags** (*string*) – Comma separated list of tags.

summary_by_datacenter()

Summary of the networks on the account, grouped by data center.

The resultant dictionary is primarily useful for statistical purposes. It contains count information rather than raw data. If you want raw information, see the [list_vlans\(\)](#) method instead.

Returns A dictionary keyed by data center with the data containing a set of counts for subnets, hardware, virtual servers, and other objects residing within that data center.

unassign_global_ip(global_ip_id)

Unassigns a global IP address from a target.

Parameters **id** (*int*) – The ID of the global IP being unassigned

3.2.17 SoftLayer.ordering

Ordering Manager

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.ordering.**OrderingManager**(*client*)

Manager to help ordering via the SoftLayer API.

Parameters **client** ([SoftLayer.API.BaseClient](#)) – the client instance

static filter_outlet_packages(packages)

Remove packages designated as OUTLET.

Those type of packages must be handled in a different way, and they are not supported at the moment.

Parameters **packages** – Dictionary of packages. Name and description keys must be present in each of them.

generate_order(package_keyname, location, item_keynames, complex_type=None, hourly=True, preset_keyname=None, extras=None, quantity=1)

Generates an order with the given package and prices.

This function takes in parameters needed for an order and generates an order dictionary. This dictionary can then be used in either `verify` or `placeOrder()`.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The keyname for the package being ordered
- **location** (*str*) – The datacenter location string for ordering (Ex: DALLAS13)
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – The list of item keyname strings to order. To see list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_items()` (or *slcli order item-list*)
- **complex_type** (*str*) – The complex type to send with the order. Typically begins with *SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_*.
- **hourly** (*bool*) – If true, uses hourly billing, otherwise uses monthly billing
- **preset_keyname** (*string*) – If needed, specifies a preset to use for that package. To see a list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_preset()` (or *slcli order preset-list*)

- **extras** (*dict*) – The extra data for the order in dictionary format. Example: A VSI order requires hostname and domain to be set, so extras will look like the following: {'virtualGuests': [{'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'softlayer.com'}]}
- **quantity** (*int*) – The number of resources to order

generate_order_template(*quote_id, extra, quantity=1*)

Generate a complete order template.

Parameters

- **quote_id** (*int*) – ID of target quote
- **extra** (*dictionary*) – Overrides for the defaults of SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order
- **quantity** (*int*) – Number of items to order.

get_item_capacity(*items, item_keynames*)

Get item capacity.

static get_item_price_id(*core, prices, term=0*)

get item price id

core: None or a number to match against capacityRestrictionType prices: list of SoftLayer_Product_Item_Price term: int to match against SoftLayer_Product_Item_Price.termLength

get_item_prices(*package_id*)

Get item prices.

Retrieve a SoftLayer_Product_Package item prices record.

Parameters **package_id** (*int*) – package identifier.

Returns A list of price IDs associated with the given package.

get_item_prices_by_location(*location, package_keyname*)

Returns the item prices by location.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*string*) – The package for which to get the items.
- **location** (*string*) – location name or keyname to get the item prices.

get_location_id(*location*)

Finds the location ID of a given datacenter

This is mostly used so either a dc name, or regions keyname can be used when ordering :param str location: Region Keyname (DALLAS13) or datacenter name (dal13) :returns: integer id of the datacenter

static get_only_active_packages(*packages*)

Return only active packages.

If a package is active, it is eligible for ordering This will inspect the 'isActive' property on the provided packages

Parameters **packages** – Dictionary of packages, isActive key must be present

get_order_container(*quote_id*)

Generate an order container from a quote object.

Parameters **quote_id** – ID number of target quote

get_order_detail(*order_id, mask=None*)

Get order details.

Parameters

- **order_id** (*int*) – to specify the order that we want to retrieve.
- **mask** (*string*) – Mask to specify the properties we want to retrieve.

get_package_by_key(*package_keyname*, *mask=None*)

Get a single package with a given key.

If no packages are found, returns None

Parameters

- **package_keyname** – string representing the package key name we are interested in.
- **mask** (*string*) – Mask to specify the properties we want to retrieve

get_package_by_type(*package_type*, *mask=None*)

Get a single package of a given type.

Syntactic sugar to retrieve a single package of a given type. If multiple packages share the given type, this will return the first one returned by the API. If no packages are found, returns None

Parameters **package_type** (*string*) – representing the package type key name we are interested in

get_package_id_by_type(*package_type*)

Return the package ID of a Product Package with a given type.

Parameters **package_type** (*string*) – representing the package type key name we are interested in

Raises **ValueError** – when no package of the given type is found

get_packages_of_type(*package_types*, *mask=None*)

Get packages that match a certain type.

Each ordering package has a type, so return all packages that match the types we are looking for

Parameters

- **package_types** (*list*) – List of strings representing the package type keynames we are interested in.
- **mask** (*string*) – Mask to specify the properties we want to retrieve

get_preset_by_key(*package_keyname*, *preset_keyname*, *mask=None*)

Gets a single preset with the given key.

get_preset_prices(*preset*)

Get preset item prices.

Retrieve a SoftLayer_Product_Package_Preset record.

Parameters **preset** (*int*) – preset identifier.

Returns A list of price IDs associated with the given preset_id.

get_price_id_list(*package_keyname*, *item_keynames*, *core=None*)

Converts a list of item keynames to a list of price IDs.

This function is used to convert a list of item keynames into a list of price IDs that are used in the Product_Order verifyOrder() and placeOrder() functions.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The package associated with the prices
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – A list of item keyname strings

- **core** (*str*) – preset guest core capacity.

Returns A list of price IDs associated with the given item keynames in the given package

get_quote_details(*quote_id*)

Retrieve quote details.

Parameters **quote_id** – ID number of target quote

get_quotes()

Retrieve a list of active quotes.

Returns a list of SoftLayer_Billing_Order_Quote

list_categories(*package_keyname*, ***kwargs*)

List the categories for the given package.

Parameters **package_keyname** (*str*) – The package for which to get the categories.

Returns List of categories associated with the package

list_items(*package_keyname*, ***kwargs*)

List the items for the given package.

Parameters **package_keyname** (*str*) – The package for which to get the items.

Returns List of items in the package

list_packages(***kwargs*)

List active packages.

Returns List of active packages.

list_presets(*package_keyname*, ***kwargs*)

Gets active presets for the given package.

Parameters **package_keyname** (*str*) – The package for which to get presets

Returns A list of package presets that can be used for ordering

order_quote(*quote_id*, *extra*)

Places an order using a quote

```
extras = {
    'hardware': {'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'testing.com'},
    'quantity': 2
}
manager = ordering.OrderingManager(env.client)
result = manager.order_quote(12345, extras)
```

Parameters

- **quote_id** (*int*) – ID for the target quote
- **extra** (*dictionary*) – Overrides for the defaults of SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order
- **quantity** (*int*) – Quantity to override default

package_locations(*package_keyname*)

List datacenter locations for a package keyname

Parameters **package_keyname** (*str*) – The package for which to get the items.

Returns List of locations a package is orderable in

place_order(*package_keyname, location, item_keynames, complex_type=None, hourly=True, preset_keyname=None, extras=None, quantity=1*)

Places an order with the given package and prices.

This function takes in parameters needed for an order and places the order.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The keyname for the package being ordered
- **location** (*str*) – The datacenter location string for ordering (Ex: DALLAS13)
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – The list of item keyname strings to order. To see list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_items()` (or *slcli order item-list*)
- **complex_type** (*str*) – The complex type to send with the order. Typically begins with *SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_*.
- **hourly** (*bool*) – If true, uses hourly billing, otherwise uses monthly billing
- **preset_keyname** (*string*) – If needed, specifies a preset to use for that package. To see a list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_preset()` (or *slcli order preset-list*)
- **extras** (*dict*) – The extra data for the order in dictionary format. Example: A VSI order requires hostname and domain to be set, so extras will look like the following: `{'virtualGuests': [{'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'softlayer.com'}]}`
- **quantity** (*int*) – The number of resources to order

place_quote(*package_keyname, location, item_keynames, complex_type=None, preset_keyname=None, extras=None, quantity=1, quote_name=None, send_email=False*)

Place a quote with the given package and prices.

This function takes in parameters needed for an order and places the quote.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The keyname for the package being ordered
- **location** (*str*) – The datacenter location string for ordering (Ex: DALLAS13)
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – The list of item keyname strings to order. To see list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_items()` (or *slcli order item-list*)
- **complex_type** (*str*) – The complex type to send with the order. Typically begins with *SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_*.
- **preset_keyname** (*string*) – If needed, specifies a preset to use for that package. To see a list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_preset()` (or *slcli order preset-list*)
- **extras** (*dict*) – The extra data for the order in dictionary format. Example: A VSI order requires hostname and domain to be set, so extras will look like the following: `{'virtualGuests': [{'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'softlayer.com'}]}`
- **quantity** (*int*) – The number of resources to order
- **quote_name** (*string*) – A custom name to be assigned to the quote (optional).
- **send_email** (*bool*) – This flag indicates that the quote should be sent to the email address associated with the account or order.

resolve_location_name(*location_key*)

Resolves a location name using a string location key.

Parameters **location_key** (*string*) – A string location used to resolve the location name.

Returns An location name.

save_quote(*quote_id*)

Save a quote.

Parameters *quote_id* – ID number of target quote

verify_order(*package_keyname, location, item_keynames, complex_type=None, hourly=True, preset_keyname=None, extras=None, quantity=1*)

Verifies an order with the given package and prices.

This function takes in parameters needed for an order and verifies the order to ensure the given items are compatible with the given package.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The keyname for the package being ordered
- **location** (*str*) – The datacenter location string for ordering (Ex: DALLAS13)
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – The list of item keyname strings to order. To see list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_items()` (or `slcli order item-list`)
- **complex_type** (*str*) – The complex type to send with the order. Typically begins with `SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_`.
- **hourly** (*bool*) – If true, uses hourly billing, otherwise uses monthly billing
- **preset_keyname** (*string*) – If needed, specifies a preset to use for that package. To see a list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_preset()` (or `slcli order preset-list`)
- **extras** (*dict*) – The extra data for the order in dictionary format. Example: A VSI order requires hostname and domain to be set, so extras will look like the following: `'virtualGuests': [{ 'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'softlayer.com' }]`
- **quantity** (*int*) – The number of resources to order

verify_quote(*quote_id, extra*)

Verifies that a quote order is valid.

```
extras = {
    'hardware': {'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'testing.com'},
    'quantity': 2
}
manager = ordering.OrderingManager(env.client)
result = manager.verify_quote(12345, extras)
```

Parameters

- **quote_id** (*int*) – ID for the target quote
- **extra** (*dictionary*) – Overrides for the defaults of `SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order`
- **quantity** (*int*) – Quantity to override default

3.2.18 SoftLayer.sshkey

SSH Key Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager(*client*)

Manages account SSH keys in SoftLayer.

See product information here: <https://knowledgelayer.softlayer.com/procedure/ssh-keys>

Parameters *client* (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_key(*key*, *label*, *notes=None*)

Adds a new SSH key to the account.

Parameters

- **key** (*string*) – The SSH key to add
- **label** (*string*) – The label for the key
- **notes** (*string*) – Additional notes for the key

Returns A dictionary of the new key's information.

delete_key(*key_id*)

Permanently deletes an SSH key from the account.

Parameters *key_id* (*int*) – The ID of the key to delete

edit_key(*key_id*, *label=None*, *notes=None*)

Edits information about an SSH key.

Parameters

- **key_id** (*int*) – The ID of the key to edit
- **label** (*string*) – The new label for the key
- **notes** (*string*) – Notes to set or change on the key

Returns A Boolean indicating success or failure

get_key(*key_id*)

Returns full information about a single SSH key.

Parameters *key_id* (*int*) – The ID of the key to retrieve

Returns A dictionary of information about the key

list_keys(*label=None*)

Lists all SSH keys on the account.

Parameters *label* (*string*) – Filter list based on SSH key label

Returns A list of dictionaries with information about each key

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters *identifier* (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

3.2.19 SoftLayer.ssl

SSL Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.ssl.SSLManager(*client*)

Manages SSL certificates in SoftLayer.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/ssl-certificates>

Example:

```
# Initialize the Manager.
# env variables. These can also be specified in ~/.softlayer,
# or passed directly to SoftLayer.Client()
# SL_USERNAME = YOUR_USERNAME
# SL_API_KEY = YOUR_API_KEY
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.Client()
mgr = SoftLayer.SSLManager(client)
```

Parameters *client* (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_certificate(*certificate*)

Creates a new certificate.

Parameters *certificate* (*dict*) – A dictionary representing the parts of the certificate. See sldn.softlayer.com for more info.

Example:

```
cert = ??
result = mgr.add_certificate(certificate=cert)
```

edit_certificate(*certificate*)

Updates a certificate with the included options.

The provided dict must include an ‘id’ key and value corresponding to the certificate ID that should be updated.

Parameters *certificate* (*dict*) – the certificate to update.

Example:

```
# Updates the cert id 1234
cert['id'] = 1234
cert['certificate'] = ??
result = mgr.edit_certificate(certificate=cert)
```

get_certificate(*cert_id*)

Gets a certificate with the ID specified.

Parameters *cert_id* (*integer*) – the certificate ID to retrieve

Example:

```
cert = mgr.get_certificate(cert_id=1234)
print(cert)
```

list_certs(*method='all'*)

List all certificates.

Parameters **method** (*string*) – The type of certificates to list. Options are ‘all’, ‘expired’, and ‘valid’.

Returns A list of dictionaries representing the requested SSL certs.

Example:

```
# Get all valid SSL certs
certs = mgr.list_certs(method='valid')
print certs
```

remove_certificate(*cert_id*)

Removes a certificate.

Parameters **cert_id** (*integer*) – a certificate ID to remove

Example:

```
# Removes certificate with id 1234
result = mgr.remove_certificate(cert_id = 1234)
```

3.2.20 SoftLayer.ticket

Ticket Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.ticket.**TicketManager**(*client*)

Manages SoftLayer support tickets.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/support>

Parameters **client** (*SoftLayer.API.BaseClient*) – the client instance

attach_hardware(*ticket_id=None, hardware_id=None*)

Attach hardware to a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** (*integer*) – the id of the ticket to attach to
- **hardware_id** (*integer*) – the id of the hardware to attach

Returns dict – The new ticket attachment

attach_virtual_server(*ticket_id=None, virtual_id=None*)

Attach a virtual server to a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** (*integer*) – the id of the ticket to attach to
- **virtual_id** (*integer*) – the id of the virtual server to attach

Returns dict – The new ticket attachment

create_ticket(*title=None, body=None, subject=None, priority=None*)

Create a new ticket.

Parameters

- **title** (*string*) – title for the new ticket
- **body** (*string*) – body for the new ticket
- **subject** (*integer*) – id of the subject to be assigned to the ticket
- **priority** (*integer*) – Value from 1 (highest) to 4 (lowest)

detach_hardware(*ticket_id=None, hardware_id=None*)

Detach hardware from a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** – the id of the ticket to detach from
- **hardware_id** – the id of the hardware to detach

Returns bool – Whether the detachment was successful

detach_virtual_server(*ticket_id=None, virtual_id=None*)

Detach a virtual server from a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** – the id of the ticket to detach from
- **virtual_id** – the id of the virtual server to detach

Returns bool – Whether the detachment was successful

get_ticket(*ticket_id*)

Get details about a ticket.

Parameters **ticket_id** (*integer*) – the ticket ID

Returns dict – information about the specified ticket

list_subjects()

List all ticket subjects.

list_tickets(*open_status=True, closed_status=True*)

List all tickets.

Parameters

- **open_status** (*boolean*) – include open tickets
- **closed_status** (*boolean*) – include closed tickets

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

update_ticket(*ticket_id=None, body=None*)

Update a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** (*integer*) – the id of the ticket to update
- **body** (*string*) – entry to update in the ticket

upload_attachment(*ticket_id=None, file_path=None, file_name=None*)

Upload an attachment to a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** (*integer*) – the id of the ticket to upload the attachment to
- **file_path** (*string*) – The path of the attachment to be uploaded
- **file_name** (*string*) – The name of the attachment shown in the ticket

Returns dict – The uploaded attachment

3.2.21 SoftLayer.vs

VS Manager/helpers

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager(*client, ordering_manager=None*)
Manages SoftLayer Virtual Servers.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/virtual-servers>

Example:

```
# Initialize the VSManager.
# env variables. These can also be specified in ~/.softlayer,
# or passed directly to SoftLayer.Client()
# SL_USERNAME = YOUR_USERNAME
# SL_API_KEY = YOUR_API_KEY
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.Client()
mgr = SoftLayer.VSManager(client)
```

Parameters

- **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance
- **ordering_manager** (SoftLayer.managers.OrderingManager) – an optional manager to handle ordering. If none is provided, one will be auto initialized.

attach_portable_storage(*vs_id, portable_id*)

Attach portal storage to a Virtual Server.

Parameters

- **vs_id** (*int*) – Virtual server id.
- **portable_id** (*int*) – Portal storage id.

Returns SoftLayer_Provisioning_Version1_Transaction.

authorize_storage(*vs_id, username_storage*)

Authorize File or Block Storage to a Virtual Server.

Parameters

- **vs_id** (*int*) – Virtual server id.
- **username_storage** (*string*) – Storage username.

Returns bool.

cancel_instance(*instance_id*)

Cancel an instance immediately, deleting all its data.

Parameters `instance_id` (*integer*) – the instance ID to cancel

Example:

```
# Cancels instance 12345
mgr.cancel_instance(12345)
```

capture(*instance_id*, *name*, *additional_disks=False*, *notes=None*)

Capture one or all disks from a VS to a SoftLayer image.

Parameters set to None will be ignored and not attempted to be updated.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to edit
- **name** (*string*) – name assigned to the image
- **additional_disks** (*bool*) – set to true to include all additional attached storage devices
- **notes** (*string*) – notes about this particular image

Returns dictionary – information about the capture transaction.

Example:: name = “Testing Images” notes = “Some notes about this image” result = mgr.capture(instance_id=12345, name=name, notes=notes)

change_port_speed(*instance_id*, *public*, *speed*)

Allows you to change the port speed of a virtual server’s NICs.

Example:

```
#change the Public interface to 10Mbps on instance 12345
result = mgr.change_port_speed(instance_id=12345,
                                public=True, speed=10)
# result will be True or an Exception
```

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – The ID of the VS
- **public** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate which interface to change. True (default) means the public interface. False indicates the private interface.
- **speed** (*int*) – The port speed to set.

Warning: A port speed of 0 will disable the interface.

create_instance(***kwargs*)

Creates a new virtual server instance.

Warning: This will add charges to your account

Example:

```

new_vsi = {
    'domain': u'test01.labs.sftlyr.ws',
    'hostname': u'minion05',
    'datacenter': u'hkg02',
    'flavor': 'BL1_1X2X100'
    'dedicated': False,
    'private': False,
    'os_code' : u'UBUNTU_LATEST',
    'hourly': True,
    'ssh_keys': [1234],
    'disks': ('100', '25'),
    'local_disk': True,
    'tags': 'test, pleaseCancel',
    'public_security_groups': [12, 15]
}

vsi = mgr.create_instance(**new_vsi)
# vsi will have the newly created vsi details if done properly.
print vsi

```

Parameters

- **cpus** (*int*) – The number of virtual CPUs to include in the instance.
- **memory** (*int*) – The amount of RAM to order.
- **hourly** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate if this server should be billed hourly (default) or monthly.
- **hostname** (*string*) – The hostname to use for the new server.
- **domain** (*string*) – The domain to use for the new server.
- **local_disk** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate if this should be a local disk (default) or a SAN disk.
- **datacenter** (*string*) – The short name of the data center in which the VS should reside.
- **os_code** (*string*) – The operating system to use. Cannot be specified if image_id is specified.
- **image_id** (*int*) – The GUID of the image to load onto the server. Cannot be specified if os_code is specified.
- **dedicated** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate if this should be housed on adedicated or shared host (default). This will incur a fee on your account.
- **public_vlan** (*int*) – The ID of the public VLAN on which you want this VS placed.
- **public_security_groups** (*list*) – The list of security group IDs to apply to the public interface
- **private_security_groups** (*list*) – The list of security group IDs to apply to the private interface
- **private_vlan** (*int*) – The ID of the private VLAN on which you want this VS placed.
- **disks** (*list*) – A list of disk capacities for this server.
- **post_uri** (*string*) – The URI of the post-install script to run after reload

- **private** (*bool*) – If true, the VS will be provisioned only with access to the private network. Defaults to false
- **ssh_keys** (*list*) – The SSH keys to add to the root user
- **nic_speed** (*int*) – The port speed to set
- **tags** (*string*) – tags to set on the VS as a comma separated list
- **flavor** (*string*) – The key name of the public virtual server flavor being ordered.
- **host_id** (*int*) – The host id of a dedicated host to provision a dedicated host virtual server on.

create_instances(*config_list*)

Creates multiple virtual server instances.

This takes a list of dictionaries using the same arguments as `create_instance()`.

Warning: This will add charges to your account

Example:

```
# Define the instance we want to create.
new_vsi = {
    'domain': u'test01.labs.sftlyr.ws',
    'hostname': u'minion05',
    'datacenter': u'hkg02',
    'flavor': 'BL1_1X2X100'
    'dedicated': False,
    'private': False,
    'os_code' : u'UBUNTU_LATEST',
    'hourly': True,
    'ssh_keys': [1234],
    'disks': ('100', '25'),
    'local_disk': True,
    'tags': 'test, pleaseCancel',
    'public_security_groups': [12, 15]
}

# using .copy() so we can make changes to individual nodes
instances = [new_vsi.copy(), new_vsi.copy(), new_vsi.copy()]

# give each its own hostname, not required.
instances[0]['hostname'] = "multi-test01"
instances[1]['hostname'] = "multi-test02"
instances[2]['hostname'] = "multi-test03"

vsi = mgr.create_instances(config_list=instances)
#vsi will be a dictionary of all the new virtual servers
print vsi
```

edit(*instance_id*, *userdata=None*, *hostname=None*, *domain=None*, *notes=None*, *tags=None*)

Edit hostname, domain name, notes, and/or the user data of a VS.

Parameters set to None will be ignored and not attempted to be updated.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to edit
- **userdata** (*string*) – user data on VS to edit. If none exist it will be created
- **hostname** (*string*) – valid hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – valid domain name
- **notes** (*string*) – notes about this particular VS
- **tags** (*string*) – tags to set on the VS as a comma separated list. Use the empty string to remove all tags.

Returns bool – True or an Exception

Example:: # Change the hostname on instance 12345 to 'something' result = mgr.edit(instance_id=12345, hostname="something") #result will be True or an Exception

get_bandwidth_allocation(*instance_id*)

Combines getBandwidthAllotmentDetail() and getBillingCycleBandwidthUsage()

get_bandwidth_data(*instance_id*, *start_date=None*, *end_date=None*, *direction=None*, *rollup=3600*)

Gets bandwidth data for a server

Will get averaged bandwidth data for a given time period. If you use a rollup over 3600 be aware that the API will bump your start/end date to align with how data is stored. For example if you have a rollup of 86400 your start_date will be bumped to 00:00. If you are not using a time in the start/end date fields, this won't really matter.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Hardware Id to get data for
- **start_date** (*date*) – Date to start pulling data for.
- **end_date** (*date*) – Date to finish pulling data for
- **direction** (*string*) – Can be either 'public', 'private', or None for both.
- **rollup** (*int*) – 300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds to average data over.

get_create_options(*vsi_type='PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER'*, *datacenter=None*)

Retrieves the available options for creating a VS.

Parameters

- **vsi_type** (*string*) – vs keyName.
- **datacenter** (*string*) – short name, like dal09

Returns A dictionary of creation options.

Example:

```
# Prints out the create option dictionary
options = mgr.get_create_options()
print(options)
```

get_hardware_guests()

Returns all virtualHost capable hardware objects and their guests.

:return SoftLayer_Hardware[.].

get_instance(*instance_id*, ***kwargs*)

Get details about a virtual server instance.

Parameters *instance_id* (*integer*) – the instance ID

Returns A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified instance.

Example:

```
# Print out instance ID 12345.
vsi = mgr.get_instance(12345)
print vsi

# Print out only FQDN and primaryIP for instance 12345
object_mask = "mask[fullyQualifiedDomainName,primaryIpAddress]"
vsi = mgr.get_instance(12345, mask=mask)
print vsi
```

get_local_disks(*instance_id*)

Returns the virtual server local disks.

Parameters *instance_id* (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

get_portable_storage(*instance_id*)

Returns the virtual server portable storage.

Parameters *instance_id* (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

get_storage_credentials(*instance_id*)

Returns the virtual server storage credentials.

Parameters *instance_id* (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

get_storage_details(*instance_id*, *nas_type*)

Returns the virtual server attached network storage.

Parameters

- *instance_id* (*int*) – Id of the virtual server
- *nas_type* – storage type.

get_summary_data_usage(*instance_id*, *start_date=None*, *end_date=None*, *valid_type=None*,
summary_period=None)

Retrieve the usage information of a virtual server.

Parameters

- *instance_id* (*string*) – a string identifier used to resolve ids
- *start_date* (*string*) – the start data to retrieve the vs usage information
- *end_date* (*string*) – the start data to retrieve the vs usage information
- *valid_type* (*string string*) – the Metric_Data_Type keyName.
- *summary_period* (*int*) – summary period.

get_tracking_id(*instance_id*)

Returns the Metric Tracking Object Id for a hardware server

Parameters *instance_id* (*int*) – Id of the hardware server

list_instances(hourly=True, monthly=True, tags=None, cpus=None, memory=None, hostname=None, domain=None, local_disk=None, datacenter=None, nic_speed=None, public_ip=None, private_ip=None, transient=None, **kwargs)

Retrieve a list of all virtual servers on the account.

Example:

```
# Print out a list of hourly instances in the DAL05 data center.

for vsi in mgr.list_instances(hourly=True, datacenter='dal05'):
    print vsi['fullyQualifiedDomainName'], vsi['primaryIpAddress']

# Using a custom object-mask. Will get ONLY what is specified
object_mask = "mask[hostname,monitoringRobot[robotStatus]]"
for vsi in mgr.list_instances(mask=object_mask, hourly=True):
    print vsi
```

Parameters

- **hourly** (*boolean*) – include hourly instances
- **monthly** (*boolean*) – include monthly instances
- **tags** (*list*) – filter based on list of tags
- **cpus** (*integer*) – filter based on number of CPUS
- **memory** (*integer*) – filter based on amount of memory
- **hostname** (*string*) – filter based on hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – filter based on domain
- **local_disk** (*string*) – filter based on local_disk
- **datacenter** (*string*) – filter based on datacenter
- **nic_speed** (*integer*) – filter based on network speed (in MBPS)
- **public_ip** (*string*) – filter based on public ip address
- **private_ip** (*string*) – filter based on private ip address
- **transient** (*boolean*) – filter on transient or non-transient instances
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns Returns a list of dictionaries representing the matching virtual servers

migrate(instance_id)

Calls SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::migrate

Only actually does anything if the virtual server requires a migration. Will return an exception otherwise.

Parameters **instance_id** (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

migrate_dedicated(instance_id, host_id)

Calls SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::migrate

Only actually does anything if the virtual server requires a migration. Will return an exception otherwise.

Parameters **instance_id** (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

order_guest(*guest_object*, *test=False*)

Uses Product_Order::placeOrder to create a virtual guest.

Useful when creating a virtual guest with options not supported by Virtual_Guest::createObject specifically ipv6 support.

Parameters *guest_object* (*dictionary*) – See SoftLayer.CLI.virt.create._parse_create_args

Example:

```
new_vsi = {
    'domain': u'test01.labs.sftlyr.ws',
    'hostname': u'minion05',
    'datacenter': u'hkg02',
    'flavor': 'BL1_1X2X100'
    'dedicated': False,
    'private': False,
    'transient': False,
    'os_code' : u'UBUNTU_LATEST',
    'hourly': True,
    'ssh_keys': [1234],
    'disks': ('100', '25'),
    'local_disk': True,
    'tags': 'test, pleaseCancel',
    'public_security_groups': [12, 15],
    'ipv6': True
}

vsi = mgr.order_guest(new_vsi)
# vsi will have the newly created vsi receipt.
# vsi['orderDetails']['virtualGuests'] will be an array of created Guests
print vsi
```

reload_instance(*instance_id*, *post_uri=None*, *ssh_keys=None*, *image_id=None*)

Perform an OS reload of an instance.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to reload
- **post_url** (*string*) – The URI of the post-install script to run after reload
- **ssh_keys** (*list*) – The SSH keys to add to the root user
- **image_id** (*int*) – The GUID of the image to load onto the server

Warning: This will reformat the primary drive. Post-provision script MUST be HTTPS for it to be executed.

Example:

```
# Reload instance ID 12345 then run a custom post-provision script.
# Post-provision script MUST be HTTPS for it to be executed.
post_uri = 'https://somehost.com/bootstrap.sh'
vsi = mgr.reload_instance(12345, post_uri=post_url)
```

rescue(*instance_id*)

Reboot a VSI into the Xen rescue kernel.

Parameters *instance_id* (*integer*) – the instance ID to rescue

Returns bool – True or an Exception

Example:: # Puts instance 12345 into rescue mode result = mgr.rescue(instance_id=12345)

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters *identifier* (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

set_tags(*tags*, *guest_id*)

Sets tags on a guest with a retry decorator

Just calls guest.setTags, but if it fails from an APIError will retry

upgrade(*instance_id*, *cpus=None*, *memory=None*, *nic_speed=None*, *public=True*, *preset=None*, *disk=None*)

Upgrades a VS instance.

Example:

```
# Upgrade instance 12345 to 4 CPUs and 4 GB of memory
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
mgr = SoftLayer.VSManager(client)
mgr.upgrade(12345, cpus=4, memory=4)
```

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Instance id of the VS to be upgraded
- **cpus** (*int*) – The number of virtual CPUs to upgrade to of a VS instance.
- **preset** (*string*) – preset assigned to the vsi
- **memory** (*int*) – RAM of the VS to be upgraded to.
- **nic_speed** (*int*) – The port speed to set
- **public** (*bool*) – CPU will be in Private/Public Node.

Returns bool

verify_create_instance(***kwargs*)

Verifies an instance creation command.

Without actually placing an order. See [create_instance\(\)](#) for a list of available options.

Example:

```
new_vsi = {
    'domain': u'test01.labs.sftlyr.ws',
    'hostname': u'minion05',
    'datacenter': u'hkg02',
    'flavor': 'BL1_1X2X100'
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
'dedicated': False,
'private': False,
'transient': False,
'os_code' : u'UBUNTU_LATEST',
'hourly': True,
'ssh_keys': [1234],
'disks': ('100', '25'),
'local_disk': True,
'tags': 'test, pleaseCancel',
'public_security_groups': [12, 15]
}

vsi = mgr.verify_create_instance(**new_vsi)
# vsi will be a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Virtual_Guest
# if your order is correct. Otherwise you will get an exception
print vsi
```

wait_for_ready(instance_id, limit=3600, delay=10, pending=False)

Determine if a VS is ready and available.

In some cases though, that can mean that no transactions are running. The default arguments imply a VS is operational and ready for use by having network connectivity and remote access is available. Setting `pending=True` will ensure future API calls against this instance will not error due to pending transactions such as OS Reloads and cancellations.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (int) – The instance ID with the pending transaction
- **limit** (int) – The maximum amount of seconds to wait.
- **delay** (int) – The number of seconds to sleep before checks. Defaults to 10.
- **pending** (bool) – Wait for pending transactions not related to provisioning or reloads such as monitoring.

Example:

```
# Will return once vsi 12345 is ready, or after 10 checks
ready = mgr.wait_for_ready(12345, 10)
```

wait_for_transaction(instance_id, limit, delay=10)

Waits on a VS transaction for the specified amount of time.

This is really just a wrapper for `wait_for_ready(pending=True)`. Provided for backwards compatibility.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (int) – The instance ID with the pending transaction
- **limit** (int) – The maximum amount of time to wait.
- **delay** (int) – The number of seconds to sleep before checks. Defaults to 10.

3.2.22 SoftLayer.vs_capacity

Reserved Capacity Manager and helpers

license MIT, see License for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager(*client, ordering_manager=None*)

Manages SoftLayer Reserved Capacity Groups.

Product Information

- <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/virtual-servers?topic=virtual-servers-about-reserved-virtual-servers>
- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup/
- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup_Instance/

Parameters

- **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance
- **ordering_manager** (SoftLayer.managers.OrderingManager) – an optional manager to handle ordering. If none is provided, one will be auto initialized.

create(*name, backend_router_id, flavor, instances, test=False*)

Orders a Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – Name for the new reserved capacity
- **backend_router_id** (*int*) – This selects the pod. See create_options for a list
- **flavor** (*string*) – Capacity KeyName, see create_options for a list
- **instances** (*int*) – Number of guest this capacity can support
- **test** (*bool*) – If True, don't actually order, just test.

create_guest(*capacity_id, test, guest_object*)

Turns an empty Reserve Capacity into a real Virtual Guest

Parameters

- **capacity_id** (*int*) – ID of the RESERVED_CAPACITY_GROUP to create this guest into
- **test** (*bool*) – True will use verifyOrder, False will use placeOrder
- **guest_object** (*dictionary*) – Below is the minimum info you need to send in guest_object = { 'domain': 'test.com', 'hostname': 'A1538172419', 'os_code': 'UBUNTU_LATEST_64', 'primary_disk': '25', }

get_available_routers(*dc=None*)

Pulls down all backendRouterIds that are available

Parameters **dc** (*string*) – A specific location to get routers for, like 'dal13'.

Returns list A list of locations where RESERVED_CAPACITY can be ordered.

get_create_options()

List available reserved capacity plans

get_object(*identifier, mask=None*)

Get a Reserved Capacity Group

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – Id of the SoftLayer_Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup
- **mask** (*string*) – override default object Mask

list()

List Reserved Capacities

resolve_ids(identifier)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string**Returns** list

3.2.23 SoftLayer.vs_placement

Placement Group Manager

license MIT, see License for more details.**class** SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager(*client*)

Manages SoftLayer Reserved Capacity Groups.

Product Information

- https://console.test.cloud.ibm.com/docs/vsi/vsi_placegroup.html#placement-groups
- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Account/getPlacementGroups/
- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup_Rule/

Existing instances cannot be added to a placement group. You can only add a virtual server instance to a placement group at provisioning. To remove an instance from a placement group, you must delete or reclaim the instance.

Parameters **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance**create(placement_object)**

Creates a placement group

A placement_object is defined as:

```
placement_object = {
    'backendRouterId': 12345,
    'name': 'Test Name',
    'ruleId': 12345
}
```

- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup/

Parameters **placement_object** (*dictionary*) –**delete(group_id)**

Deletes a PlacementGroup

Placement group must be empty to be deleted. https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup/deleteObject

get_all_rules()

Returns all available rules for creating a placement group

get_backend_router_id_from_hostname(hostname)

Finds the backend router Id that matches the hostname given

No way to use an objectFilter to find a backendRouter, so we have to search the hard way.

get_object(group_id, mask=None)

Returns a PlacementGroup Object

https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup/getObject

get_routers()

Calls SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup::getAvailableRouters()

get_rule_id_from_name(name)

Finds the rule that matches name.

SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup_Rule.getAllObjects doesn't support objectFilters.

list(mask=None)

List existing placement groups

Calls SoftLayer_Account::getPlacementGroups

resolve_ids(identifier)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters **identifier** (*string*) – identifying string

Returns **list**

If you need more power or functionality than the managers provide, you can make direct API calls as well.

3.3 Making API Calls

For full control over your account and services, you can directly call the SoftLayer API. The SoftLayer API client for python leverages SoftLayer's XML-RPC API. It supports authentication, object masks, object filters, limits, offsets, and retrieving objects by id. The following section assumes you have an initialized client named 'client'.

The best way to test our setup is to call the `getObject` method on the `SoftLayer_Account` service.

```
client.call('Account', 'getObject')
```

For a more complex example we'll retrieve a support ticket with id 123456 along with the ticket's updates, the user it's assigned to, the servers attached to it, and the datacenter those servers are in. To retrieve our extra information using an `object mask`.

Retrieve a ticket using object masks.

```
ticket = client.call('Ticket', 'getObject',
    id=123456, mask="updates, assignedUser, attachedHardware.datacenter")
```

Now add an update to the ticket with `Ticket.addUpdate`. This uses a parameter, which translate to positional arguments in the order that they appear in the API docs.

```
update = client.call('Ticket', 'addUpdate', {'entry' : 'Hello!'}, id=123456)
```

Let's get a listing of virtual guests using the domain example.com

```
client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests',
            filter={'virtualGuests': {'domain': {'operation': 'example.com'}}})
```

This call gets tickets created between the beginning of March 1, 2013 and March 15, 2013. More information on [Object Filters](#).

NOTE The *value* field for startDate and endDate is in *[]*, if you do not put the date in brackets the filter will not work.

```
client.call('Account', 'getTickets',
            filter={
                'tickets': {
                    'createDate': {
                        'operation': 'betweenDate',
                        'options': [
                            {'name': 'startDate', 'value': ['03/01/2013 0:0:0']},
                            {'name': 'endDate', 'value': ['03/15/2013 23:59:59']}
                        ]
                    }
                }
            })
```

SoftLayer's XML-RPC API also allows for pagination.

```
from pprint import pprint

page1 = client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', limit=10, offset=0) # Page 1
page2 = client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', limit=10, offset=10) # Page 2

#Automatic Pagination (v5.5.3+), default limit is 100
result = client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', iter=True, limit=10)
pprint(result)

# Using a python generator, default limit is 100
results = client.iter_call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', limit=10)
for result in results:
    pprint(result)
```

NOTE *client.call(iter=True)* will pull all results, then return. *client.iter_call()* will return a generator, and only make API calls as you iterate over the results.

Here's how to create a new Cloud Compute Instance using `SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest.createObject`. Be warned, this call actually creates an hourly virtual server so this will have billing implications.

```
client.call('Virtual_Guest', 'createObject', {
    'hostname': 'myhostname',
    'domain': 'example.com',
    'startCpus': 1,
    'maxMemory': 1024,
    'hourlyBillingFlag': 'true',
    'operatingSystemReferenceCode': 'UBUNTU_LATEST',
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
'localDiskFlag': 'false'
})
```

3.4 Debugging

If you ever need to figure out what exact API call the client is making, you can do the following:

NOTE the `print_reproduceable` method produces different output for REST and XML-RPC endpoints. If you are using REST, this will produce a CURL call. If you are using XML-RPC, it will produce some pure python code you can use outside of the SoftLayer library.

```
# Setup the client as usual
client = SoftLayer.Client()
# Create an instance of the DebugTransport, which logs API calls
debugger = SoftLayer.DebugTransport(client.transport)
# Set that as the default client transport
client.transport = debugger
# Make your API call
client.call('Account', 'getObject')

# Print out the reproduceable call
for call in client.transport.get_last_calls():
    print(client.transport.print_reproduceable(call))
```

3.5 Dealing with KeyError Exceptions

One of the pain points in dealing with the SoftLayer API can be handling issues where you expected a property to be returned, but none was.

The `hostname` property of a `SoftLayer_Billing_Item` is a good example of this.

For example.

```
# Uses default username and apikey from ~/.softlayer
client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
# iter_call returns a python generator, and only makes another API call when the loop
↳ runs out of items.
result = client.iter_call('Account', 'getAllBillingItems', iter=True, mask="mask[id,
↳ hostName]")
print("Id, hostname")
for item in result:
    # will throw a KeyError: 'hostName' exception on certain billing items that do not
↳ have a hostName
    print("{} {}".format(item['id'], item['hostName']))
```

3.5.1 The Solution

Using the python dictionary's `.get()` is great for non-nested items.

```
:: print("{} {}".format(item.get('id'), item.get('hostName')))
```

Otherwise, this SDK provides a util function to do something similar. Each additional argument passed into `utils.lookup` will go one level deeper into the nested dictionary to find the item requested, returning `None` if a `KeyError` shows up.

```
:: itemId = SoftLayer.utils.lookup(item, 'id') itemHostname = SoftLayer.utils.lookup(item, 'hostName') print("{} {}".format(itemId, itemHostname))
```

3.6 API Reference

3.6.1 SoftLayer Python API Client

SoftLayer API bindings

Usage:

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(username="username",
                                              api_key="api_key")
>>> resp = client.call('Account', 'getObject')
>>> resp['companyName']
'Your Company'
```

license MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class `SoftLayer.BaseClient`(*auth=None, transport=None, config_file=None*)
Base SoftLayer API client.

Parameters

- **auth** – auth driver that looks like `SoftLayer.auth.AuthenticationBase`
- **transport** – An object that's callable with this signature: `transport(SoftLayer.transports.Request)`

authenticate_with_password(*username, password, security_question_id=None, security_question_answer=None*)

Performs Username/Password Authentication

Parameters

- **username** (*string*) – your SoftLayer username
- **password** (*string*) – your SoftLayer password
- **security_question_id** (*int*) – The security question id to answer
- **security_question_answer** (*string*) – The answer to the security question

call(*service, method, *args, **kwargs*)

Make a SoftLayer API call.

Parameters

- **method** – the method to call on the service
- ***args** – (optional) arguments for the remote call

- **id** – (optional) id for the resource
- **mask** – (optional) object mask
- **filter** (*dict*) – (optional) filter dict
- **headers** (*dict*) – (optional) optional XML-RPC headers
- **compress** (*boolean*) – (optional) Enable/Disable HTTP compression
- **raw_headers** (*dict*) – (optional) HTTP transport headers
- **limit** (*int*) – (optional) return at most this many results
- **offset** (*int*) – (optional) offset results by this many
- **iter** (*boolean*) – (optional) if True, returns a generator with the results
- **verify** (*bool*) – verify SSL cert
- **cert** – client certificate path

Usage:

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
>>> client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', mask="id", limit=10)
[...]
```

iter_call(*service, method, *args, **kwargs*)

A generator that deals with paginating through results.

Parameters

- **service** – the name of the SoftLayer API service
- **method** – the method to call on the service
- **limit** (*integer*) – result size for each API call (defaults to 100)
- ***args** – same optional arguments that `Service.call` takes
- ****kwargs** – same optional keyword arguments that `Service.call` takes

class SoftLayer.**BasicAuthentication**(*username, api_key*)

Token-based authentication class.

Parameters

- **str** (*api_key*) – a user's username
- **str** – a user's API key

get_request(*request*)

Sets token-based auth headers.

SoftLayer.Client(***kwargs*)

Get a SoftLayer API Client using environmental settings.

Deprecated in favor of `create_client_from_env()`

class SoftLayer.**IAMClient**(*auth=None, transport=None, config_file=None*)

IBM ID Client for using IAM authentication

Parameters

- **auth** – auth driver that looks like `SoftLayer.auth.AuthenticationBase`

- **transport** – An object that's callable with this signature: `transport(SoftLayer.transports.Request)`

authenticate_with_iam_token(*a_token*, *r_token=None*)

Authenticates to the SL API with an IAM Token

Parameters

- **a_token** (*string*) – Access token
- **r_token** (*string*) – Refresh Token, to be used if Access token is expired.

authenticate_with_passcode(*passcode*)

Performs IBM IAM SSO Authentication

Parameters **passcode** (*string*) – your IBMid password

authenticate_with_password(*username*, *password*, *security_question_id=None*,
security_question_answer=None)

Performs IBM IAM Username/Password Authentication

Parameters

- **username** (*string*) – your IBMid username
- **password** (*string*) – your IBMid password

call(*service*, *method*, **args*, ***kwargs*)

Handles refreshing IAM tokens in case of a HTTP 401 error

refresh_iam_token(*r_token*, *account_id=None*, *ims_account=None*)

Refreshes the IAM Token, will default to values in the config file

exception `SoftLayer.SoftLayerAPIError`(*fault_code*, *fault_string*, **args*)

`SoftLayerAPIError` is an exception raised during API errors.

Provides `faultCode` and `faultString` properties.

exception `SoftLayer.SoftLayerError`

The base `SoftLayer` error.

class `SoftLayer.SoftLayerListResult`(*items=None*, *total_count=0*)

A `SoftLayer` API list result.

total_count

total count of items that exist on the server. This is useful when paginating through a large list of objects.

`SoftLayer.create_client_from_env`(*username=None*, *api_key=None*, *endpoint_url=None*, *timeout=None*,
auth=None, *config_file=None*, *proxy=None*, *user_agent=None*,
transport=None, *verify=True*)

Creates a `SoftLayer` API client using your environment.

Settings are loaded via keyword arguments, environmental variables and config file.

Parameters

- **username** – an optional API username if you wish to bypass the package's built-in username
- **api_key** – an optional API key if you wish to bypass the package's built in API key
- **endpoint_url** – the API endpoint base URL you wish to connect to. Set this to `API_PRIVATE_ENDPOINT` to connect via `SoftLayer`'s private network.
- **proxy** – proxy to be used to make API calls
- **timeout** (*integer*) – timeout for API requests

- **auth** – an object which responds to `get_headers()` to be inserted into the xml-rpc headers.
Example: *BasicAuthentication*
- **config_file** – A path to a configuration file used to load settings
- **user_agent** – an optional User Agent to report when making API calls if you wish to bypass the packages built in User Agent string
- **transport** – An object that's callable with this signature: `transport(SoftLayer.transports.Request)`
- **verify** (*bool*) – decide to verify the server's SSL/TLS cert. DO NOT SET TO FALSE WITHOUT UNDERSTANDING THE IMPLICATIONS.

Usage:

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
>>> resp = client.call('Account', 'getObject')
>>> resp['companyName']
'Your Company'
```


COMMAND-LINE INTERFACE

The SoftLayer command line interface is available via the *slcli* command available in your *PATH*. The *slcli* command is a reference implementation of SoftLayer API bindings for python and how to efficiently make API calls. See the *Usage Examples* section to see how to discover all of the functionality not fully documented here.

4.1 Configuration Setup

To update the configuration, you can use *slcli setup*.

```
$ slcli setup
Username []: username
API Key or Password []:
Endpoint (public|private|custom): public
:.....:
:      Name : Value                               :
:.....:
:   Username : username                           :
:   API Key  : oyVmeipYQCNrjVS4rF9bHWV7D75S6pa1fghF1384v7mwRCbHTfuJ8qRORIqoVnha :
: Endpoint URL : https://api.softlayer.com/xmlrpc/v3.1/      :
:.....:
Are you sure you want to write settings to "/home/me/.softlayer"? [y/N]: y
```

To check the configuration, you can use *slcli config show*.

```
$ slcli config show
:.....:
:      Name : Value                               :
:.....:
:   Username : username                           :
:   API Key  : oyVmeipYQCNrjVS4rF9bHWV7D75S6pa1fghF1384v7mwRCbHTfuJ8qRORIqoVnha :
: Endpoint URL : https://api.softlayer.com/xmlrpc/v3.1/      :
:.....:
```

If you are using an account created from the <https://cloud.ibm.com> portal, your username will be literally *apikey*, and use the key provided. [How to create an IBM apikey](#)

To see more about the config file format, see *Configuration File*.

4.2 Usage Examples

To discover the available commands, simply type *slcli*.

```
$ slcli
Usage: slcli [OPTIONS] COMMAND [ARGS]...

SoftLayer Command-line Client

Options:
  --format [table|raw|json|jsonraw] Output format [default: raw]
  -C, --config PATH                  Config file location [default: ~/.softlayer]
  -v, --verbose                      Sets the debug noise level, specify multiple.
↪ times for more verbosity.
  --proxy TEXT                       HTTP[S] proxy to be use to make API calls
  -y, --really / --not-really        Confirm all prompt actions
  --demo / --no-demo                Use demo data instead of actually making API.
↪ calls
  --version                          Show the version and exit.
  -h, --help                        Show this message and exit.

Commands:
  block           Block Storage.
  call-api        Call arbitrary API endpoints.
  cdn             Content Delivery Network.
  config          CLI configuration.
  dedicatedhost   Dedicated Host.
  dns             Domain Name System.
  email          Email Deliviry Network
  event-log       Event Logs.
  file           File Storage.
  firewall        Firewalls.
  globalip        Global IP addresses.
  hardware        Hardware servers.
  image           Compute images.
  ipsec           IPSEC VPN
  loadbal         Load balancers.
  metadata        Find details about this machine.
  nas             Network Attached Storage.
  object-storage  Object Storage.
  order           View and order from the catalog.
  report          Reports.
  securitygroup   Network security groups.
  setup           Edit configuration.
  shell           Enters a shell for slcli.
  sshkey          SSH Keys.
  ssl             SSL Certificates.
  subnet          Network subnets.
  summary         Account summary.
  ticket          Support tickets.
  user            Manage Users.
  virtual         Virtual Servers.
  vlan           Network VLANs.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

To use most commands your SoftLayer username and api_key need to be configured. The easiest way to do that is to use: 'slcli setup'

As you can see, there are a number of commands/sections. To look at the list of subcommands for virtual servers type *slcli vs*. For example:

```
$ slcli vs
Usage: slcli vs [OPTIONS] COMMAND [ARGS]...

Virtual Servers.

Options:
  --help  Show this message and exit.

Commands:
  cancel          Cancel virtual servers.
  capture         Capture SoftLayer image.
  create          Order/create virtual servers.
  create-options  Virtual server order options.
  credentials     List virtual server credentials.
  detail          Get details for a virtual server.
  dns-sync        Sync DNS records.
  edit            Edit a virtual server's details.
  list            List virtual servers.
  network         Manage network settings.
  pause           Pauses an active virtual server.
  power_off       Power off an active virtual server.
  power_on        Power on a virtual server.
  ready           Check if a virtual server is ready.
  reboot          Reboot an active virtual server.
  reload          Reload operating system on a virtual server.
  rescue          Reboot into a rescue image.
  resume          Resumes a paused virtual server.
  upgrade         Upgrade a virtual server.
```

Finally, we can make an actual call. Let's list out the virtual servers on our account by using *slcli vs list*.

Example:

```
$ slcli vs list
.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:
:   id   : datacenter :      host      : cores : memory :   primary_ip   : backend_
↪ip   : active_transaction :
.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:
: 1234567 :   sjc01   : test.example.com :    4   :   4G   :    12.34.56    :   65.43.
↪21   :      -      :
.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:
```

Most commands will take in additional options/arguments. To see all available actions, use *-help*.

```
$ slcli vs list --help
Usage: slcli vs list [OPTIONS]

    List virtual servers.

Options:
  --sortby [guid|hostname|primary_ip|backend_ip|datacenter]
                                Column to sort by
  -c, --cpu INTEGER             Number of CPU cores
  -D, --domain TEXT             Domain portion of the FQDN
  -d, --datacenter TEXT        Datacenter shortname
  -H, --hostname TEXT          Host portion of the FQDN
  -m, --memory INTEGER         Memory in mebibytes
  -n, --network TEXT           Network port speed in Mbps
  --hourly                     Show only hourly instances
  --monthly                    Show only monthly instances
  --tags TEXT                  Show instances that have one of these comma-
                                separated tags
  --help                       Show this message and exit.
```

DEBUGGING

To see exactly what API call is being made by the SLCLI, you can use the verbose option.

A single `-v` will show a simple version of the API call, along with some statistics

```
slcli -v vs detail 74397127
Calling: SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::getObject(id=74397127, mask='id,globalIdentifier,
↳fullyQualifiedDomainName,hostname,domain', filter='None', args=(), limit=None,
↳offset=None))
Calling: SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::getReverseDomainRecords(id=77460683, mask='', filter=
↳'None', args=(), limit=None, offset=None))
:.....:
:  name      :                               value      :
:.....:
: execution_time :                2.020334s                :
: api_calls      :      SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::getObject (1.515583s) :
:               :      SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::getReverseDomainRecords (0.494480s) :
: version        :                softlayer-python/v5.7.2                :
: python_version :      3.7.3 (default, Mar 27 2019, 09:23:15) :
:               :      [Clang 10.0.1 (clang-1001.0.46.3)] :
: library_location : /Users/chris/Code/py3/lib/python3.7/site-packages/SoftLayer :
:.....:
```

Using `-vv` will print out some API call details in the summary as well.

```
slcli -vv account summary
Calling: SoftLayer_Account::getObject(id=None, mask='mask[ nextInvoiceTotalAmount,
↳pendingInvoice[invoiceTotalAmount], blockDeviceTemplateGroupCount, dedicatedHostCount,
↳domainCount, hardwareCount, networkStorageCount, openTicketCount, networkVlanCount,
↳subnetCount, userCount, virtualGuestCount ]', filter='None', args=(), limit=None,
↳offset=None))
:.....:
:  name      :                               value      :
:.....:
: execution_time :                0.921271s                :
: api_calls      :      SoftLayer_Account::getObject (0.911208s) :
: version        :                softlayer-python/v5.7.2                :
: python_version :      3.7.3 (default, Mar 27 2019, 09:23:15) :
:               :      [Clang 10.0.1 (clang-1001.0.46.3)] :
: library_location : /Users/chris/Code/py3/lib/python3.7/site-packages/SoftLayer :
:.....:
:.....:
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

:           :           SoftLayer_Account::getObject           :
:.....:.....:
:  id      :           None                                   :
:  mask    :           mask[                                   :
:           :           nextInvoiceTotalAmount,             :
:           :           pendingInvoice[invoiceTotalAmount],  :
:           :           blockDeviceTemplateGroupCount,       :
:           :           dedicatedHostCount,                  :
:           :           domainCount,                          :
:           :           hardwareCount,                        :
:           :           networkStorageCount,                  :
:           :           openTicketCount,                      :
:           :           networkVlanCount,                     :
:           :           subnetCount,                          :
:           :           userCount,                            :
:           :           virtualGuestCount                    :
:           :           ]                                     :
:  filter  :           None                                   :
:  limit   :           None                                   :
:  offset  :           None                                   :
:.....:.....:

```

Using `-vvv` will print out the exact API that can be used without the `softlayer-python` framework, A simple python code snippet for XML-RPC, a curl call for REST API calls. This is dependant on the endpoint you are using in the config file.

```

slcli -vvv account summary
curl -u $SL_USER:$SL_APIKEY -X GET -H "Accept: */*" -H "Accept-Encoding: gzip, deflate,
↪compress" 'https://api.softlayer.com/rest/v3.1/SoftLayer_Account/getObject.json?
↪objectMask=mask%5B%0A+++++++nextInvoiceTotalAmount%2C%0A+++++++pendingInvoice
↪%5BinvoiceTotalAmount%5D%2C%0A+++++++blockDeviceTemplateGroupCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++dedicatedHostCount%2C%0A+++++++domainCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++hardwareCount%2C%0A+++++++networkStorageCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++openTicketCount%2C%0A+++++++networkVlanCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++subnetCount%2C%0A+++++++userCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++virtualGuestCount%0A+++++++%5D'

```

COMMAND DIRECTORY

6.1 Account Commands

6.1.1 account summary

Prints some various bits of information about an account

```
account summary [OPTIONS]
```

6.1.2 account events

Summary and acknowledgement of upcoming and ongoing maintenance events

```
account events [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--ack-all

Acknowledge every upcoming event. Doing so will turn off the popup in the control portal

6.1.3 account event-detail

Details of a specific event, and ability to acknowledge event.

```
account event-detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--ack

Acknowledge Event. Doing so will turn off the popup in the control portal

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.1.4 account invoices

List invoices

```
account invoices [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--limit <limit>

How many invoices to get back.

Default 50

--closed

Include invoices with a CLOSED status.

Default False

--all

Return ALL invoices. There may be a lot of these.

Default False

6.1.5 account invoice-detail

Invoice details

```
account invoice-detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--details

Shows a very detailed list of charges

Default False

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.1.6 account billing-items

Lists billing items with some other useful information.

Similar to <https://cloud.ibm.com/billing/billing-items>

```
account billing-items [OPTIONS]
```

6.1.7 account item-detail

Gets detailed information about a billing item.

```
account item-detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.1.8 account cancel-item

Cancels a billing item.

```
account cancel-item [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.1.9 account orders

Lists account orders. Use *slcli order lookup <ID>* to find more details about a specific order.

```
account orders [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-l, --limit <limit>

How many results to get in one api call

Default 100

6.1.10 account licenses

Show all licenses.

```
account licenses [OPTIONS]
```

6.2 Autoscale Commands

These commands were added in version 5.8.1

For making changes to the triggers or the autoscale group itself, see the [Autoscale Portal](#)

- [Autoscale Product](#)
- [Autoscale Documentation](#)
- [Autoscale Portal](#)

6.2.1 autoscale list

List AutoScale Groups.

```
autoscale list [OPTIONS]
```

6.2.2 autoscale detail

Get details of an Autoscale groups.

```
autoscale detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.2.3 autoscale scale

Scales an Autoscale group. Bypasses a scale group's cooldown period.

```
autoscale scale [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--up, --down

‘--up’ adds guests, ‘--down’ removes guests.

--by, --to

Required ‘--by’ will add/remove the specified number of guests. ‘--to’ will add/remove a number of guests to get the group’s guest count to the specified number.

--amount <amount>

Required Number of guests for the scale action.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.2.4 autoscale logs

Retrieve logs for an autoscale group

```
autoscale logs [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-d, --date-min <date_min>

Earliest date to retrieve logs for.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.2.5 autoscale tag

Tags all guests in an autoscale group.

–tags “Use, quotes, if you, want whitespace”

–tags Otherwise,Just,commas

```
autoscale tag [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-g, --tags <tags>
Tags to set for each guest in this group. Existing tags are overwritten. An empty string will remove all tags

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.2.6 autoscale edit

Edits an Autoscale group.

`autoscale edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER`

Options

--name <name>
Scale group's name.

--min <minimum>
Set the minimum number of guests

--max <maximum>
Set the maximum number of guests

--userdata <userdata>
User defined metadata string

-F, --userfile <userfile>
Read userdata from a file

--cpu <cpu>
Number of CPUs for new guests (existing not effected)

--memory <memory>
RAM in MB or GB for new guests (existing not effected)

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.3 Block Commands

6.3.1 block access-authorize

Authorizes hosts to access a given volume

```
block access-authorize [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- h, --hardware-id** <hardware_id>
The id of one SoftLayer_Hardware to authorize
- v, --virtual-id** <virtual_id>
The id of one SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest to authorize
- i, --ip-address-id** <ip_address_id>
The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress to authorize
- ip-address** <ip_address>
An IP address to authorize

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.3.2 block access-list

List ACLs.

```
block access-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- sortby** <sortby>
Column to sort by
- columns** <columns>
Columns to display. Options: id, name, type, private_ip_address, source_subnet, host_id, username, password, allowed_host_id

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.3 block access-revoke

Revokes authorization for hosts accessing a given volume

```
block access-revoke [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-h, --hardware-id <hardware_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Hardware to revoke authorization

-v, --virtual-id <virtual_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest to revoke authorization

-i, --ip-address-id <ip_address_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress to revoke authorization

--ip-address <ip_address>

An IP address to revoke authorization

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.4 block access-password

Changes a password for a volume's access.

access id is the allowed_host_id from slcli block access-list

```
block access-password [OPTIONS] ACCESS_ID
```

Options

-p, --password <password>

Password you want to set, this command will fail if the password is not strong

Arguments

ACCESS_ID

Required argument

6.3.5 block replica-failback

Failback a block volume from the given replicant volume.

```
block replica-failback [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.6 block replica-failover

Failover a block volume to the given replicant volume.

```
block replica-failover [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--replicant-id <replicant_id>
ID of the replicant volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.7 block replica-order

Order a block storage replica volume.

```
block replica-order [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-s, --snapshot-schedule <snapshot_schedule>
Required Snapshot schedule to use for replication, (HOURLY | DAILY | WEEKLY)
Options HOURLY | DAILY | WEEKLY

-l, --location <location>
Required Short name of the data center for the replicant (e.g.: dal09)

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) of the primary volume for which a replicant is ordered [optional]

Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--os-type <os_type>

Operating System Type (e.g.: LINUX) of the primary volume for which a replica is ordered [optional]

Options HYPER_V | LINUX | VMWARE | WINDOWS_2008 | WINDOWS_GPT | WINDOWS | XEN

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.8 block replica-partners

List existing replicant volumes for a block volume.

```
block replica-partners [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: ID, Username, Account ID, Capacity (GB), Hardware ID, Guest ID, Host ID

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.9 block replica-locations

List suitable replication datacenters for the given volume.

```
block replica-locations [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: ID, Long Name, Short Name

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.10 block snapshot-cancel

Cancel existing snapshot space for a given volume.

```
block snapshot-cancel [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--reason <reason>

An optional reason for cancellation

--immediate

Cancels the snapshot space immediately instead of on the billing anniversary

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.11 block snapshot-create

Creates a snapshot on a given volume

```
block snapshot-create [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-n, --notes <notes>

Notes to set on the new snapshot

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.12 block snapshot-delete

Deletes a snapshot on a given volume

```
block snapshot-delete [OPTIONS] SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.3.13 block snapshot-disable

Disables snapshots on the specified schedule for a given volume

```
block snapshot-disable [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--schedule-type <schedule_type>

Required Snapshot schedule [INTERVAL|HOURLY|DAILY|WEEKLY]

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.14 block snapshot-enable

Enables snapshots for a given volume on the specified schedule

```
block snapshot-enable [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--schedule-type <schedule_type>

Required Snapshot schedule [INTERVAL|HOURLY|DAILY|WEEKLY]

--retention-count <retention_count>

Required Number of snapshots to retain

--minute <minute>

Minute of the day when snapshots should be taken

--hour <hour>

Hour of the day when snapshots should be taken

--day-of-week <day_of_week>

Day of the week when snapshots should be taken

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.15 block snapshot-schedule-list

Lists snapshot schedules for a given volume

```
block snapshot-schedule-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.16 block snapshot-list

List block storage snapshots.

```
block snapshot-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: id, name, created, size_bytes

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.17 block snapshot-order

Order snapshot space for a block storage volume.

```
block snapshot-order [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--capacity <capacity>

Required Size of snapshot space to create in GB

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) of the block volume for which space is ordered [optional, and only valid for endurance storage volumes]

Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--upgrade

Flag to indicate that the order is an upgrade

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.18 block snapshot-restore

Restore block volume using a given snapshot

```
block snapshot-restore [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-s, --snapshot-id <snapshot_id>

The id of the snapshot which will be used to restore the block volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.19 block volume-cancel

Cancel an existing block storage volume.

```
block volume-cancel [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--reason <reason>

An optional reason for cancellation

--immediate

Cancels the block storage volume immediately instead of on the billing anniversary

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.20 block volume-count

List number of block storage volumes per datacenter.

```
block volume-count [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Datacenter shortname

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

6.3.21 block volume-detail

Display details for a specified volume.

```
block volume-detail [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.22 block volume-duplicate

Order a duplicate block storage volume.

```
block volume-duplicate [OPTIONS] ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- o, --origin-snapshot-id** <origin_snapshot_id>
ID of an origin volume snapshot to use for duplication.
- c, --duplicate-size** <duplicate_size>
Size of duplicate block volume in GB. ***If no size is specified, the size of the origin volume will be used.*** Potential Sizes: [20, 40, 80, 100, 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000, 12000] Minimum: [the size of the origin volume]
- i, --duplicate-iops** <duplicate_iops>
Performance Storage IOPS, between 100 and 6000 in multiples of 100 [only used for performance volumes] ***If no IOPS value is specified, the IOPS value of the origin volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is less than 0.3, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be less than 0.3. If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is greater than or equal to 0.3, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be greater than or equal to 0.3.]
- t, --duplicate-tier** <duplicate_tier>
Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) [only used for endurance volumes] ***If no tier is specified, the tier of the origin volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is 0.25, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be 0.25. If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is greater than 0.25, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be greater than 0.25.]
Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10
- s, --duplicate-snapshot-size** <duplicate_snapshot_size>
The size of snapshot space to order for the duplicate. ***If no snapshot space size is specified, the snapshot space size of the origin block volume will be used.*** Input "0" for this parameter to order a duplicate volume with no snapshot space.
- billing** <billing>
Optional parameter for Billing rate (default to monthly)
Options hourly | monthly
- dependent-duplicate** <dependent_duplicate>
Whether or not this duplicate will be a dependent duplicate of the origin volume.
Default False

Arguments

ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.3.23 block volume-list

List block storage.

block volume-list [OPTIONS]

Options

- u, --username <username>**
Volume username
- d, --datacenter <datacenter>**
Datacenter shortname
- o, --order <order>**
Filter by ID of the order that purchased the block storage
- storage-type <storage_type>**
Type of storage volume
Options performance | endurance
- sortby <sortby>**
Column to sort by
- columns <columns>**
Columns to display. Options: id, username, datacenter, storage_type, capacity_gb, bytes_used, IOPs, ip_addr, lunId, active_transactions, rep_partner_count, created_by, notes

6.3.24 block volume-modify

Modify an existing block storage volume.

```
block volume-modify [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- c, --new-size <new_size>**
New Size of block volume in GB. ***If no size is given, the original size of volume is used.*** Potential Sizes: [20, 40, 80, 100, 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000, 12000] Minimum: [the original size of the volume]
- i, --new-iops <new_iops>**
Performance Storage IOPS, between 100 and 6000 in multiples of 100 [only for performance volumes] ***If no IOPS value is specified, the original IOPS value of the volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If original IOPS/GB for the volume is less than 0.3, new IOPS/GB must also be less than 0.3. If original IOPS/GB for the volume is greater than or equal to 0.3, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be greater than or equal to 0.3.]
- t, --new-tier <new_tier>**
Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) [only for endurance volumes] ***If no tier is specified, the original tier of the volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If original IOPS/GB for the volume is 0.25, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be 0.25. If original IOPS/GB for the volume is greater than 0.25, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be greater than 0.25.]
Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.25 block volume-order

Order a block storage volume.

Valid size and iops options can be found here: <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/BlockStorage/index.html#provisioning-considerations>

`block volume-order [OPTIONS]`

Options

--storage-type <storage_type>

Required Type of block storage volume

Options performance | endurance

--size <size>

Required Size of block storage volume in GB.

--iops <iops>

Performance Storage IOPs. Options vary based on storage size. [required for storage-type performance]

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOP per GB) [required for storage-type endurance]

Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--os-type <os_type>

Required Operating System

Options HYPER_V | LINUX | VMWARE | WINDOWS_2008 | WINDOWS_GPT | WINDOWS | XEN

--location <location>

Required Datacenter short name (e.g.: dal09)

--snapshot-size <snapshot_size>

Optional parameter for ordering snapshot space along with endurance block storage; specifies the size (in GB) of snapshot space to order

--service-offering <service_offering>

The service offering package to use for placing the order. [optional, default is 'storage_as_a_service']. enterprise and performance are depreciated

Options storage_as_a_service | enterprise | performance

--billing <billing>

Optional parameter for Billing rate (default to monthly)

Options hourly | monthly

6.3.26 block volume-set-lun-id

Set the LUN ID on an existing block storage volume.

The LUN ID only takes effect during the Host Authorization process. It is recommended (but not necessary) to de-authorize all hosts before using this method. See *block access-revoke*.

VOLUME_ID - the volume ID on which to set the LUN ID.

LUN_ID - recommended range is an integer between 0 and 255. Advanced users can use an integer between 0 and 4095.

```
block volume-set-lun-id [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID LUN_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

LUN_ID

Required argument

6.3.27 block volume-limits

List number of block storage volumes limit per datacenter.

```
block volume-limits [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

6.3.28 block volume-refresh

Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

```
block volume-refresh [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.3.29 block volume-convert

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

```
block volume-convert [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.30 block subnets-list

List block storage assigned subnets for the given host id.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: `slcli block access-list <volume_id>`

```
block subnets-list [OPTIONS] ACCESS_ID
```

Arguments

ACCESS_ID

Required argument

6.3.31 block subnets-assign

Assign block storage subnets to the given host id.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: `slcli block access-list <volume_id>`

SoftLayer_Account::iscsiisolationdisabled must be False to use this command

```
block subnets-assign [OPTIONS] ACCESS_ID
```

Options

--subnet-id <subnet_id>

ID of the subnets to assign; e.g.: `--subnet-id 1234`

Arguments

ACCESS_ID

Required argument

6.3.32 block subnets-remove

Remove block storage subnets for the given host id.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: `slcli block access-list <volume_id>`

SoftLayer_Account::iscsiisolationdisabled must be False to use this command

```
block subnets-remove [OPTIONS] ACCESS_ID
```

Options

--subnet-id <subnet_id>

ID of the subnets to remove; e.g.: `--subnet-id 1234`

Arguments

ACCESS_ID

Required argument

6.3.33 block volume-refresh

Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

```
block volume-refresh [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.3.34 block volume-convert

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

```
block volume-convert [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.35 block volume-set-note

Set note for an existing block storage volume.

```
block volume-set-note [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-n, --note <note>
Required Public notes related to a Storage volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.3.36 block disaster-recovery-failover

Failover an inaccessible block volume to its available replicant volume.

```
block disaster-recovery-failover [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--replicant-id <replicant_id>
ID of the replicant volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

Failover an inaccessible block volume to its available replicant volume. If a volume (with replication) becomes inaccessible due to a disaster event, this method can be used to immediately failover to an available replica in another location. This method does not allow for failback via API. After using this method, to failback to the original volume, please open a support ticket. If you wish to test failover, please use replica-failover.

6.4 Interacting with CDN

6.4.1 cdn detail

Detail a CDN Account.

```
cdn detail [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID
```

Options

--history <history>

Bandwidth, Hits, Ratio counted over history number of days ago. 89 is the maximum.

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID

Required argument

6.4.2 cdn list

List all CDN accounts.

```
cdn list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options unique_id | domain | origin | vendor | cname | status

6.4.3 cdn origin-add

Create an origin path for an existing CDN mapping.

For more information see the following documentation:

<https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/infrastructure/CDN?topic=CDN-manage-your-cdn#adding-origin-path-details>

```
cdn origin-add [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID ORIGIN PATH
```

Options

-t, --origin-type <origin_type>

The origin type.

Default server

Options server | storage

-H, --header <header>

The host header to communicate with the origin.

-b, --bucket-name <bucket_name>

The name of the available resource [required if --origin-type=storage]

-p, --port <port>

The http port number.

Default 80

-P, --protocol <protocol>

The protocol used by the origin.

Default http

-o, --optimize-for <optimize_for>
Performance configuration

Default web

Options web | video | file

-e, --extensions <extensions>
File extensions that can be stored in the CDN, example: 'jpg, png, pdf'

-c, --cache-query <cache_query>
Cache query rules with the following formats: 'ignore-all', 'include: <query-names>', 'ignore: <query-names>'

Default include-all

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID
Required argument

ORIGIN
Required argument

PATH
Required argument

6.4.4 cdn origin-list

List origin path for an existing CDN mapping.

```
cdn origin-list [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID
```

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID
Required argument

6.4.5 cdn origin-remove

Removes an origin path for an existing CDN mapping.

```
cdn origin-remove [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID ORIGIN_PATH
```

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID

Required argument

ORIGIN_PATH

Required argument

6.4.6 cdn purge

Creates a purge record and also initiates the purge call.

Example: `slcli cdn purge 9779455 /article/file.txt`

For more information see the following documentation:

<https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/infrastructure/CDN?topic=CDN-manage-your-cdn#purging-cached-content>

```
cdn purge [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID PATH
```

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID

Required argument

PATH

Required argument

6.4.7 cdn edit

Edit a CDN Account.

Note: You can use the hostname or uniqueId as IDENTIFIER.

```
cdn edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-H, --header <header>

Host header.

-t, --http-port <http_port>

HTTP port.

-o, --origin <origin>

Origin server address.

-r, --respect-headers <respect_headers>

Respect headers. The value 1 is On and 0 is Off.

Options 1 | 0

-c, --cache <cache>

Cache key optimization. These are the valid options to choose: 'include-all', 'ignore-all', 'include-specified', 'ignore-specified'. If you select 'include-specified' or 'ignore-specified' please add a description too using again `-cache`, e.g `-cache=include-specified -cache=description`.

-p, --performance-configuration <performance_configuration>

Optimize for, General web delivery', 'Large file optimization', 'Video on demand optimization', the Dynamic content acceleration option is not added because this has a special configuration.

Options General web delivery | Large file optimization | Video on demand optimization

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.5 Call API

This function allows you to easily call any API. The format is

```
slcli call-api SoftLayer_Service method param1 param2 --id=1234 --mask="mask[id,name]"
```

Parameters should be in the order they are presented on sldn.softlayer.com. Any complex parameters (those that link to other datatypes) should be presented as JSON strings. They need to be enclosed in single quotes ('), and variables and strings enclosed in double quotes (").

For example: `{"hostname": "test", "ssh_keys": [{"id": 1234}]}`

6.5.1 call-api

Call arbitrary API endpoints with the given SERVICE and METHOD.

For parameters that require a datatype, use a JSON string for that parameter. Example:

```
slcli call-api Account getObject
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests --limit=10 --mask=id,hostname
slcli call-api Virtual_Guest getObject --id=12345
slcli call-api Metric_Tracking_Object getBandwidthData --id=1234 \
    "2015-01-01 00:00:00" "2015-01-1 12:00:00" public
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests \
    -f 'virtualGuests.datacenter.name=dal05' \
    -f 'virtualGuests.maxCpu=4' \
    --mask=id,hostname,datacenter.name,maxCpu
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests \
    -f 'virtualGuests.datacenter.name IN dal05,sng01'
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests \
    --json-filter '{"virtualGuests":{"hostname":{"operation":"^= test"}}}' --limit=10
slcli -v call-api SoftLayer_User_Customer addBulkPortalPermission --id=1234567 \
    '[{"keyName": "NETWORK_MESSAGE_DELIVERY_MANAGE"}]'
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests \
    --orderBy virtualguests.id=ASC
```

```
call-api [OPTIONS] SERVICE METHOD [PARAMETERS]...
```


Options

- id** <_id>
Init parameter
- f, --filter** <_filters>
Object filters. This should be of the form: 'property=value' or 'nested.property=value'. Complex filters should use --json-filter. (multiple occurrence permitted)
- mask** <mask>
String-based object mask
- limit** <limit>
Result limit
- offset** <offset>
Result offset
- orderBy** <orderby>
To set the sort direction, ASC or DESC can be provided. This should be of the form: '-orderBy nested.property' default DESC or '-orderBy nested.property=ASC', e.g. -orderBy subnets.id default DESC -orderBy subnets.id=ASC
- output-python, --no-output-python**
Show python example code instead of executing the call
- json-filter** <json_filter>
A JSON string to be passed in as the object filter to the API call. Remember to use double quotes (") for variable names. Can NOT be used with --filter. Dont use whitespace outside of strings, or the slcli might have trouble parsing it.

Arguments

SERVICE

Required argument

METHOD

Required argument

PARAMETERS

Optional argument(s)

6.6 Shell

6.7 MetaData

Used to retrieve information about the server making the API call. Can be called with an un-authenticated API call.

6.7.1 metadata

Find details about the machine making these API calls.

Table 1: Choices

backend_ip
backend_mac
datacenter
datacenter_id
fqdn
frontend_mac
id
ip
network
provision_state
tags
user_data

```
metadata [OPTIONS] {backend_ip|backend_mac|datacenter|datacenter_id|fqdn|front
end_mac|id|ip|network|provision_state|tags|user_data}
```

Arguments

PROP

Required argument

These commands only work on devices on the backend SoftLayer network. This allows for self-discovery for newly provisioned resources.

6.8 Config

Creating an IBMID apikey IBMID for services

Creating a SoftLayer apikey

6.8.1 config setup

Setup the ~/.softlayer file with username and apikey.

[Auth Types]

ibmid: Requires your cloud.ibm.com username and password, and generates a classic infrastructure API key.

cloud_key: A 32 character API key. Username will be 'apikey'

classic_key: A 64 character API key used in the Softlayer/Classic Infrastructure systems.

sso: For users with @ibm.com email addresses.

```
config setup [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-a, --auth <auth>

Select a method of authentication.

Default classic_key

Options ibmid | cloud_key | classic_key | sso

6.8.2 config show

Show current configuration.

```
config show [OPTIONS]
```

6.8.3 setup

Setup the ~/.softlayer file with username and apikey.

[Auth Types]

ibmid: Requires your cloud.ibm.com username and password, and generates a classic infrastructure API key.

cloud_key: A 32 character API key. Username will be 'apikey'

classic_key: A 64 character API key used in the Softlayer/Classic Infrastructure systems.

sso: For users with @ibm.com email addresses.

```
setup [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-a, --auth <auth>

Select a method of authentication.

Default classic_key

Options ibmid | cloud_key | classic_key | sso

6.9 Dedicated Host Commands

6.9.1 dedicatedhost list

List dedicated host.

```
dedicatedhost list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- c, --cpu <cpu>**
Number of CPU cores
- tag <tag>**
Filter by tags (multiple occurrence permitted)
- sortby <sortby>**
Column to sort by
Default name
- columns <columns>**
Columns to display. [options: datacenter, created_by, tags]
Default id,name,cpuCount,diskCapacity,memoryCapacity,datacenter,guestCount
- d, --datacenter <datacenter>**
Datacenter shortname
- H, --name <name>**
Host portion of the FQDN
- m, --memory <memory>**
Memory capacity in mebibytes
- D, --disk <disk>**
Disk capacity

6.9.2 dedicatedhost create

Order/create a dedicated host.

`dedicatedhost create [OPTIONS]`

Options

- H, --hostname <hostname>**
Required Host portion of the FQDN
- r, --router <router>**
Router hostname ex. fcr02a.dal13
- D, --domain <domain>**
Required Domain portion of the FQDN
- d, --datacenter <datacenter>**
Required Datacenter shortname
- f, --flavor <flavor>**
Required Dedicated Virtual Host flavor
- billing <billing>**
Billing rate
Default hourly
Options hourly | monthly

--verify

Verify dedicatedhost without creating it.

-t, --template <template>

A template file that defaults the command-line options

--export <export>

Exports options to a template file

See 'slcli dedicatedhost create-options' for valid options.

6.9.3 dedicatedhost create-options

host order options for a given dedicated host.

To get a list of available backend routers see example: `slcli dh create-options --datacenter dal05 --flavor 56_CORES_X_242_RAM_X_1_4_TB`

```
dedicatedhost create-options [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Router hostname (requires --flavor) ex. ams01

-f, --flavor <flavor>

Dedicated Virtual Host flavor (requires --datacenter) ex. 56_CORES_X_242_RAM_X_1_4_TB

6.9.4 dedicatedhost detail

Get details for a dedicated host.

```
dedicatedhost detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--price

Show associated prices

--guests

Show guests on dedicated host

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.9.5 dedicatedhost cancel

Cancel a dedicated host server immediately

```
dedicatedhost cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.9.6 dedicatedhost cancel-guests

Cancel all virtual guests of the dedicated host immediately.

Use the 'slcli vs cancel' command to cancel an specific guest

```
dedicatedhost cancel-guests [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.9.7 dedicatedhost list-guests

List guests which are in a dedicated host server.

```
dedicatedhost list-guests [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- c, --cpu <cpu>**
Number of CPU cores
- D, --domain <domain>**
Domain portion of the FQDN
- H, --hostname <hostname>**
Host portion of the FQDN
- m, --memory <memory>**
Memory in mebibytes
- tag <tag>**
Filter by tags (multiple occurrence permitted)
- sortby <sortby>**
Column to sort by
 - Default** hostname

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. [options: guid, cpu, memory, datacenter, primary_ip, backend_ip, created_by, power_state, tags]

Default id,hostname,domain,primary_ip,backend_ip,power_state

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.10 DNS Management

6.10.1 dns import

Import zone based off a BIND zone file.

```
dns import [OPTIONS] ZONEFILE
```

Options

--dry-run

Don't actually create records

Arguments

ZONEFILE

Required argument

6.10.2 dns record-add

Add resource record.

Each resource record contains a RECORD and DATA property, defining a resource's name and it's target data. Domains contain multiple types of resource records so it can take one of the following values: A, AAAA, CNAME, MX, SPF, SRV, and PTR.

About reverse records (PTR), the RECORD value must to be the public Ip Address of device you would like to manage reverse DNS.

```
slcli dns record-add 10.10.8.21 PTR myhost.com --ttl=900
```

Examples:

```
slcli dns record-add myhost.com A 192.168.1.10 --zone=foobar.com --ttl=900
```

```
slcli dns record-add myhost.com AAAA 2001:DB8::1 --zone=foobar.com
```

```
slcli dns record-add 192.168.1.2 MX 192.168.1.10 --zone=foobar.com --priority=11 --ttl=1800
```

```
slcli dns record-add myhost.com TXT "txt-verification=rXOxyZounZs87oacJSKvbUSIQ"
--zone=2223334
```

```
slcli dns record-add myhost.com SPF "v=spf1 include:_spf.google.com ~all" --zone=2223334
```

```
slcli dns record-add myhost.com SRV 192.168.1.10 --zone=2223334 --service=foobar --port=80 --protocol=TCP
```

<code>dns record-add [OPTIONS] RECORD RECORD_TYPE DATA</code>

Options

--zone <zone>

Zone name or identifier that the resource record will be associated with. Required for all record types except PTR

--ttl <ttl>

TTL value in seconds, such as 86400

Default 900

--priority <priority>

The priority of the target host. (MX or SRV type only)

Default 10

--protocol <protocol>

The protocol of the service, usually either TCP or UDP. (SRV type only)

Default tcp

Options tcp | udp | tls

--port <port>

The TCP/UDP/TLS port on which the service is to be found. (SRV type only)

--service <service>

The symbolic name of the desired service. (SRV type only)

--weight <weight>

Relative weight for records with same priority. (SRV type only)

Default 5

Arguments

RECORD

Required argument

RECORD_TYPE

Required argument

DATA

Required argument

6.10.3 dns record-edit

Update DNS record.

```
dns record-edit [OPTIONS] ZONE_ID
```

Options

- by-record** <by_record>
Edit by host record, such as www
- by-id** <by_id>
Edit a single record by its ID
- data** <data>
Record data, such as an IP address
- ttl** <ttl>
TTL value in seconds, such as 86400

Arguments

- ZONE_ID**
Required argument

6.10.4 dns record-list

List all records in a zone.

```
dns record-list [OPTIONS] ZONE
```

Options

- data** <data>
Record data, such as an IP address
- record** <record>
Host record, such as www
- ttl** <ttl>
TTL value in seconds, such as 86400
- type** <record_type>
Record type, such as A or CNAME

Arguments

ZONE

Required argument

6.10.5 dns record-remove

Remove resource record.

```
dns record-remove [OPTIONS] RECORD_ID
```

Arguments

RECORD_ID

Required argument

6.10.6 dns zone-create

Create a zone.

```
dns zone-create [OPTIONS] ZONE
```

Arguments

ZONE

Required argument

6.10.7 dns zone-delete

Delete zone.

```
dns zone-delete [OPTIONS] ZONE
```

Arguments

ZONE

Required argument

6.10.8 dns zone-list

List all zones.

```
dns zone-list [OPTIONS]
```

6.10.9 dns zone-print

Print zone in BIND format.

```
dns zone-print [OPTIONS] ZONE
```

Arguments

ZONE

Required argument

6.11 Email Commands

6.11.1 email list

Lists Email Delivery Service

```
email list [OPTIONS]
```

6.11.2 email detail

Display details for a specified email.

```
email detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.11.3 email edit

Edit details of an email delivery account.

```
email edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--username <username>

Sets username for this account

--email <email>

Sets the contact email for this account

--password <password>

Password must be between 8 and 20 characters and must contain one letter and one number.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.12 Event-Log Commands

6.12.1 event-log get

Get Event Logs

Example: `slcli event-log get -d 01/01/2019 -D 02/01/2019 -t User -l 10`

`event-log get [OPTIONS]`

Options

-d, --date-min <date_min>
The earliest date we want to search for event logs in mm/dd/yyyy format.

-D, --date-max <date_max>
The latest date we want to search for event logs in mm/dd/yyyy format.

-e, --obj-event <obj_event>
The event we want to get event logs for

-i, --obj-id <obj_id>
The id of the object we want to get event logs for

-t, --obj-type <obj_type>
The type of the object we want to get event logs for

-z, --utc-offset <utc_offset>
UTC Offset for searching with dates. +/-HHMM format

Default -0000

--metadata, --no-metadata
Display metadata if present

Default False

-l, --limit <limit>
Total number of result to return. -1 to return ALL, there may be a LOT of these.

Default 50

There are usually quite a few events on an account, so be careful when using the `-limit -1` option. The command will automatically break requests out into smaller sub-requests, but this command may take a very long time to complete. It will however print out data as it comes in.

6.12.2 event-log types

Get Event Log Types

```
event-log types [OPTIONS]
```

Currently the types are as follows, more may be added in the future.

```

:.....:
:      types      :
:.....:
:      Account    :
:      CDN        :
:      User       :
: Bare Metal Instance :
: API Authentication :
:      Server     :
:      CCI        :
:      Image      :
:      Bluemix LB  :
:      Facility   :
: Cloud Object Storage :
:      Security Group :
:.....:

```

6.13 File Commands

6.13.1 file access-authorize

Authorizes hosts to access a given volume

```
file access-authorize [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- h, --hardware-id <hardware_id>**
The id of one SoftLayer_Hardware to authorize
- v, --virtual-id <virtual_id>**
The id of one SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest to authorize
- i, --ip-address-id <ip_address_id>**
The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IPAddress to authorize
- ip-address <ip_address>**
An IP address to authorize
- s, --subnet-id <subnet_id>**
The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet to authorize

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.2 file access-list

List ACLs.

```
file access-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: id, name, type, private_ip_address, source_subnet, host_id, username, password, allowed_host_id

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.3 file access-revoke

Revokes authorization for hosts accessing a given volume

```
file access-revoke [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-h, --hardware-id <hardware_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Hardware to revoke authorization

-v, --virtual-id <virtual_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest to revoke authorization

-i, --ip-address-id <ip_address_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress to revoke authorization

--ip-address <ip_address>

An IP address to revoke authorization

-s, --subnet-id <subnet_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet to revoke authorization

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.4 file replica-failback

Failback a file volume from the given replicant volume.

```
file replica-failback [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.5 file replica-failover

Failover a file volume to the given replicant volume.

```
file replica-failover [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--replicant-id <replicant_id>
ID of the replicant volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.6 file replica-order

Order a file storage replica volume.

```
file replica-order [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-s, --snapshot-schedule <snapshot_schedule>
Required Snapshot schedule to use for replication, (HOURLY | DAILY | WEEKLY)
Options HOURLY | DAILY | WEEKLY

-l, --location <location>
Required Short name of the data center for the replicant (e.g.: dal09)

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) of the primary volume for which a replicant is ordered [optional]

Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.7 file replica-partners

List existing replicant volumes for a file volume.

```
file replica-partners [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: ID, Username, Account ID, Capacity (GB), Hardware ID, Guest ID, Host ID

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.8 file replica-locations

List suitable replication datacenters for the given volume.

```
file replica-locations [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: ID, Long Name, Short Name

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.9 file snapshot-cancel

Cancel existing snapshot space for a given volume.

```
file snapshot-cancel [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--reason <reason>

An optional reason for cancellation

--immediate

Cancels the snapshot space immediately instead of on the billing anniversary

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.10 file snapshot-create

Creates a snapshot on a given volume

```
file snapshot-create [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-n, --notes <notes>

Notes to set on the new snapshot

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.11 file snapshot-delete

Deletes a snapshot on a given volume

```
file snapshot-delete [OPTIONS] SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.13.12 file snapshot-disable

Disables snapshots on the specified schedule for a given volume

```
file snapshot-disable [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--schedule-type <schedule_type>

Required Snapshot schedule [INTERVAL|HOURLY|DAILY|WEEKLY]

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.13 file snapshot-enable

Enables snapshots for a given volume on the specified schedule

```
file snapshot-enable [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--schedule-type <schedule_type>

Required Snapshot schedule [INTERVAL|HOURLY|DAILY|WEEKLY]

--retention-count <retention_count>

Required Number of snapshots to retain

--minute <minute>

Minute of the day when snapshots should be taken

--hour <hour>

Hour of the day when snapshots should be taken

--day-of-week <day_of_week>

Day of the week when snapshots should be taken

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.14 file snapshot-list

List file storage snapshots.

```
file snapshot-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: id, name, created, size_bytes

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.15 file snapshot-order

Order snapshot space for a file storage volume.

```
file snapshot-order [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--capacity <capacity>

Required Size of snapshot space to create in GB

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) of the file volume for which space is ordered [optional, and only valid for endurance storage volumes]

Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--upgrade

Flag to indicate that the order is an upgrade

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.16 file snapshot-restore

Restore file volume using a given snapshot

```
file snapshot-restore [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-s, --snapshot-id <snapshot_id>

The id of the snapshot which will be used to restore the block volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.17 file volume-cancel

Cancel an existing file storage volume.

```
file volume-cancel [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--reason <reason>

An optional reason for cancellation

--immediate

Cancels the file storage volume immediately instead of on the billing anniversary

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.18 file volume-count

List number of file storage volumes per datacenter.

```
file volume-count [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>
Datacenter shortname

--sortby <sortby>
Column to sort by

6.13.19 file volume-detail

Display details for a specified volume.

```
file volume-detail [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.13.20 file volume-duplicate

Order a duplicate file storage volume.

```
file volume-duplicate [OPTIONS] ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-o, --origin-snapshot-id <origin_snapshot_id>
ID of an origin volume snapshot to use for duplication.

-c, --duplicate-size <duplicate_size>
Size of duplicate file volume in GB. ***If no size is specified, the size of the origin volume will be used.*** Minimum: [the size of the origin volume]

-i, --duplicate-iops <duplicate_iops>
Performance Storage IOPS, between 100 and 6000 in multiples of 100 [only used for performance volumes] ***If no IOPS value is specified, the IOPS value of the origin volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is less than 0.3, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be less than 0.3. If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is greater than or equal to 0.3, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be greater than or equal to 0.3.]

-t, --duplicate-tier <duplicate_tier>
Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) [only used for endurance volumes] ***If no tier is specified, the tier of the origin volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is 0.25, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be 0.25. If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is greater than 0.25, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be greater than 0.25.]

Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

-s, --duplicate-snapshot-size <duplicate_snapshot_size>

The size of snapshot space to order for the duplicate. ***If no snapshot space size is specified, the snapshot space size of the origin file volume will be used.*** Input “0” for this parameter to order a duplicate volume with no snapshot space.

--billing <billing>

Optional parameter for Billing rate (default to monthly)

Options hourly | monthly

--dependent-duplicate <dependent_duplicate>

Whether or not this duplicate will be a dependent duplicate of the origin volume.

Default False

Arguments

ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.21 file volume-list

List file storage.

file volume-list [OPTIONS]

Options

-u, --username <username>

Volume username

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Datacenter shortname

-o, --order <order>

Filter by ID of the order that purchased the block storage

--storage-type <storage_type>

Type of storage volume

Options performance | endurance

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: id, username, datacenter, storage_type, capacity_gb, bytes_used, ip_addr, active_transactions, mount_addr, rep_partner_count, created_by, notes

6.13.22 file volume-modify

Modify an existing file storage volume.

```
file volume-modify [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- c, --new-size <new_size>**
New Size of file volume in GB. ***If no size is given, the original size of volume is used.*** Potential Sizes: [20, 40, 80, 100, 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000, 12000] Minimum: [the original size of the volume]
- i, --new-iops <new_iops>**
Performance Storage IOPS, between 100 and 6000 in multiples of 100 [only for performance volumes] ***If no IOPS value is specified, the original IOPS value of the volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If original IOPS/GB for the volume is less than 0.3, new IOPS/GB must also be less than 0.3. If original IOPS/GB for the volume is greater than or equal to 0.3, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be greater than or equal to 0.3.]
- t, --new-tier <new_tier>**
Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) [only for endurance volumes] ***If no tier is specified, the original tier of the volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If original IOPS/GB for the volume is 0.25, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be 0.25. If original IOPS/GB for the volume is greater than 0.25, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be greater than 0.25.]
Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.13.23 file volume-order

Order a file storage volume.

Valid size and iops options can be found here: <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/FileStorage/index.html#provisioning-considerations>

```
file volume-order [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- storage-type <storage_type>**
Required Type of file storage volume
Options performance | endurance
- size <size>**
Required Size of file storage volume in GB
- iops <iops>**
Performance Storage IOPs. Options vary based on storage size. [required for storage-type performance]

--tier <tier>
Endurance Storage Tier (IOP per GB) [required for storage-type endurance]
Options 0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--location <location>
Required Datacenter short name (e.g.: dal09)

--snapshot-size <snapshot_size>
Optional parameter for ordering snapshot space along with endurance file storage; specifies the size (in GB) of snapshot space to order

--service-offering <service_offering>
The service offering package to use for placing the order. [optional, default is 'storage_as_a_service']. enterprise and performance are depreciated
Options storage_as_a_service | enterprise | performance

--billing <billing>
Optional parameter for Billing rate (default to monthly)
Options hourly | monthly

6.13.24 file volume-limits

List number of block storage volumes limit per datacenter.

```
file volume-limits [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>
Column to sort by

6.13.25 file volume-refresh

Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

```
file volume-refresh [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

SNAPSHOT_ID
Required argument

6.13.26 file volume-convert

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

```
file volume-convert [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.27 file snapshot-schedule-list

Lists snapshot schedules for a given volume

```
file snapshot-schedule-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.28 file volume-refresh

Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

```
file volume-refresh [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.13.29 file volume-convert

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

```
file volume-convert [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.30 file volume-set-note

Set note for an existing file storage volume.

```
file volume-set-note [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-n, --note <note>

Required Public notes related to a Storage volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.31 file disaster-recovery-failover

Failover an inaccessible file volume to its available replicant volume.

```
file disaster-recovery-failover [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--replicant-id <replicant_id>

ID of the replicant volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

Failover an inaccessible file volume to its available replicant volume. If a volume (with replication) becomes inaccessible due to a disaster event, this method can be used to immediately failover to an available replica in another location. This method does not allow for failback via API. After using this method, to failback to the original volume, please open a support ticket. If you wish to test failover, please use replica-failover.

6.14 Firewall Management

6.14.1 firewall add

Create new firewall.

TARGET: Id of the server the firewall will protect

```
firewall add [OPTIONS] TARGET
```

Options

--firewall-type <firewall_type>

Required Firewall type

Options vs | vlan | server

-ha, --high-availability

High available firewall option

Arguments

TARGET

Required argument

6.14.2 firewall cancel

Cancels a firewall.

```
firewall cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.14.3 firewall detail

Detail firewall.

```
firewall detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.14.4 firewall edit

Edit firewall rules.

```
firewall edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.14.5 firewall list

List firewalls.

```
firewall list [OPTIONS]
```

6.15 Global IP Addresses

6.15.1 globalip assign

Assigns the global IP to a target.

```
globalip assign [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER TARGET
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

TARGET

Required argument

6.15.2 globalip cancel

Cancel global IP.

```
globalip cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.15.3 globalip create

Creates a global IP.

```
globalip create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-v6, --ipv6

Order a IPv6 IP

--test <test>

test order

6.15.4 globalip list

List all global IPs.

```
globalip list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--ip-version <ip_version>

Display only IPv4

Options v4 | v6

6.15.5 globalip unassign

Unassigns a global IP from a target.

```
globalip unassign [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16 Interacting with Hardware

6.16.1 hardware bandwidth

Bandwidth data over date range. Bandwidth is listed in GB

Using just a date might get you times off by 1 hour, use T00:01 to get just the specific days data Timezones can also be included with the YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss.000000-HH:mm format.

Due to some rounding and date alignment details, results here might be slightly different than results in the control portal.

Example:

```
slcli hw bandwidth 1234 -s 2019-05-01T00:01 -e 2019-05-02T00:00:01.000000-12:00
```

```
hardware bandwidth [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- s, --start_date <start_date>**
Required Start Date YYYY-MM-DD, YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss,
- e, --end_date <end_date>**
Required End Date YYYY-MM-DD, YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss
- p, --summary_period <summary_period>**
300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds
Default 3600
- q, --quite_summary**
Only show the summary table
Default False

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.16.2 hardware cancel-reasons

Display a list of cancellation reasons.

```
hardware cancel-reasons [OPTIONS]
```

6.16.3 hardware cancel

Cancel a dedicated server.

```
hardware cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--immediate

Cancels the server immediately (instead of on the billing anniversary)

--comment <comment>

An optional comment to add to the cancellation ticket

--reason <reason>

An optional cancellation reason. See cancel-reasons for a list of available options

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.4 hardware create-options

Server order options for a given chassis.

```
hardware create-options [OPTIONS] [LOCATION]
```

Options

-p, --prices

Use `-prices` to list the server item prices, and to list the Item Prices by location, add it to the `-prices` option using location short name, e.g. `-prices dal13`

Arguments

LOCATION

Optional argument

6.16.5 hardware create

Order/create a dedicated server.

```
hardware create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- H, --hostname <hostname>**
Required Host portion of the FQDN
- D, --domain <domain>**
Required Domain portion of the FQDN
- s, --size <size>**
Required Hardware size
- o, --os <os>**
Required OS Key value
- d, --datacenter <datacenter>**
Required Datacenter shortname
- port-speed <port_speed>**
Port speeds. DEPRECATED, use `--network`
- no-public**
Private network only. DEPRECATED, use `--network`.
- network <network>**
Network Option Key. Use instead of port-speed option
- billing <billing>**
Billing rate

 Default hourly
 Options hourly | monthly
- i, --postinstall <postinstall>**
Post-install script. Should be a HTTPS URL.
- test**
Do not actually create the server
- t, --template <template>**
A template file that defaults the command-line options
- export <export>**
Exports options to a template file
- wait <wait>**
Wait until the server is finished provisioning for up to X seconds before returning
- router-public <router_public>**
The ID of the public ROUTER on which you want the virtual server placed
- router-private <router_private>**
The ID of the private ROUTER on which you want the virtual server placed
- k, --key <key>**
SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)
- e, --extra <extra>**
Extra option Key Names (multiple occurrence permitted)

See 'slcli server create-options' for valid options.

Provides some basic functionality to order a server. *slcli order* has a more full featured method of ordering servers. This command only supports the FAST_PROVISION type.

As of v5.9.0 please use the `--network` option for specifying port speed, as that allows a bit more granularity for choosing your networking type.

6.16.6 hardware credentials

List server credentials.

```
hardware credentials [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.7 hardware detail

Get details for a hardware device.

```
hardware detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--passwords

Show passwords (check over your shoulder!)

--price

Show associated prices

--components

Show associated hardware components

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.8 hardware billing

Get billing for a hardware device.

```
hardware billing [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.9 hardware edit

Edit hardware details.

```
hardware edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- D, --domain <domain>**
Domain portion of the FQDN
- F, --userfile <userfile>**
Read userdata from file
- g, --tag <tag>**
Tags to set or empty string to remove all
- H, --hostname <hostname>**
Host portion of the FQDN
- u, --userdata <userdata>**
User defined metadata string
- public-speed <public_speed>**
Public port speed. -1 is best speed available
Options 0 | 10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000 | -1
- private-speed <private_speed>**
Private port speed. -1 is best speed available
Options 0 | 10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000 | -1
- redundant**
The desired state of redundancy for the interface(s)
- degraded**
The desired state of degraded for the interface(s)

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

Note : Using multiple ‘ : ’ can cause an error.

```
$ slcli hw edit 123456 -tag "cloud:service:db2whoc, cloud:svcplan:flex, cloud:svcenv:prod, cloud:bmixenv:fra"
```

```
TransportError(0): ('Connection aborted.',
```

```
RemoteDisconnected('Remote end closed connection without response',))
```

When setting port speed, use “-1” to indicate best possible configuration. Using 10/100/1000/10000 on a server with a redundant interface may result the interface entering a degraded state. See [setPublicNetworkInterfaceSpeed](#) for more information.

6.16.10 hardware list

List hardware servers.

```
hardware list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- c, --cpu <cpu>**
Filter by number of CPU cores
- D, --domain <domain>**
Filter by domain
- d, --datacenter <datacenter>**
Filter by datacenter
- H, --hostname <hostname>**
Filter by hostname
- m, --memory <memory>**
Filter by memory in gigabytes
- n, --network <network>**
Filter by network port speed in Mbps
- tag <tag>**
Filter by tags (multiple occurrence permitted)
- sortby <sortby>**
Column to sort by
Default hostname
- columns <columns>**
Columns to display. [options: guid, primary_ip, backend_ip, datacenter, action, created_by, tags]
Default id,hostname,primary_ip,backend_ip,datacenter,action
- l, --limit <limit>**
How many results to get in one api call, default is 100
Default 100

6.16.11 hardware power-cycle

Power cycle a server.

```
hardware power-cycle [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.12 hardware power-off

Power off an active server.

```
hardware power-off [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.13 hardware power-on

Power on a server.

```
hardware power-on [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.14 hardware reboot

Reboot an active server.

```
hardware reboot [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--hard, --soft
Perform a hard or soft reboot

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.16.15 hardware reload

Reload operating system on a server.

```
hardware reload [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-i, --postinstall <postinstall>
Post-install script to download (Only HTTPS executes, HTTP leaves file in /root)

-k, --key <key>
SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)

-l, --lvm
A flag indicating that the provision should use LVM for all logical drives.

Default False

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.16.16 hardware rescue

Reboot server into a rescue image.

```
hardware rescue [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.16.17 hardware reflash-firmware

Reflash server firmware.

```
hardware reflash-firmware [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

Reflash here means the current version of the firmware running on your server will be re-flashed onto the selected hardware. This does require a reboot. See *slcli hw update-firmware* if you want the newest version.

6.16.18 hardware update-firmware

Update server firmware.

```
hardware update-firmware [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

This function updates the firmware of a server. If already at the latest version, no software is installed.

6.16.19 hardware toggle-ipmi

Toggle the IPMI interface on and off

```
hardware toggle-ipmi [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--enable, --disable

Whether enable (DEFAULT) or disable the interface.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.20 hardware ready

Check if a server is ready.

```
hardware ready [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--wait <wait>
Seconds to wait
Default 0

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.16.21 hardware dns-sync

Sync DNS records.

```
hardware dns-sync [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-a, --a-record
Sync the A record for the host

--aaaa-record
Sync the AAAA record for the host

--ptr
Sync the PTR record for the host

--ttl <ttl>
Sets the TTL for the A and/or PTR records
Default 7200

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

If you don't specify any arguments, it will attempt to update both the A and PTR records. If you don't want to update both records, you may use the `-a` or `-ptr` arguments to limit the records updated.

6.16.22 hardware storage

Get storage details for a hardware server.

```
hardware storage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.23 hardware guests

Lists the Virtual Guests running on this server.

```
hardware guests [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.24 hardware authorize-storage

Authorize File or Block Storage to a Hardware Server.

```
hardware authorize-storage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-u, --username-storage <username_storage>

The storage username to be added to the hardware server

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.25 hardware upgrade

Upgrade a Hardware Server.

```
hardware upgrade [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```


Options

--memory <memory>
Memory Size in GB

--network <network>
Network port speed in Mbps

Options 100 | 100 Redundant | 100 Dual | 1000 | 1000 Redundant | 1000 Dual | 10000 | 10000 Redundant | 10000 Dual

--drive-controller <drive_controller>
Drive Controller

Options Non-RAID | RAID

--public-bandwidth <public_bandwidth>
Public Bandwidth in GB

--add-disk <add_disk>
Add a Hard disk in GB to a specific channel, e.g 1000 GB in disk2, it will be `--add-disk 1000 2`

--resize-disk <resize_disk>
Upgrade a specific disk size in GB, e.g `--resize-disk 2000 2`

--test
Do not actually upgrade the hardware server

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.17 Disk Image Commands

6.17.1 image delete

Delete an image.

```
image delete [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.17.2 image detail

Get details for an image.

```
image detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.17.3 image edit

Edit details of an image.

```
image edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--name <name>

Name of the image

--note <note>

Additional note for the image

--tag <tag>

Tags for the image

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.17.4 image list

List images.

```
image list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--name <name>

Filter on image name

--public, **--private**

Display only public or private images

6.17.5 image import

Import an image.

The URI for an object storage object (.vhd/.iso file) of the format: swift://<objectStorageAccount>@<cluster>/<container>/<objectPath> or cos://<regionName>/<bucketName>/<objectPath> if using IBM Cloud Object Storage

```
image import [OPTIONS] NAME URI
```

Options

--note <note>

The note to be applied to the imported template

--os-code <os_code>

The referenceCode of the operating system software description for the imported VHD, ISO, or RAW image

--ibm-api-key <ibm_api_key>

The IBM Cloud API Key with access to IBM Cloud Object Storage instance and IBM KeyProtect instance. For help creating this key see <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/cloud-object-storage?topic=cloud-object-storage-iam-overview#iam-overview-service-id-api-key>

--root-key-crn <root_key_crn>

CRN of the root key in your KMS instance

--wrapped-dek <wrapped_dek>

Wrapped Data Encryption Key provided by IBM KeyProtect. For more info see <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/key-protect?topic=key-protect-wrap-keys>

--cloud-init

Specifies if image is cloud-init

--byol

Specifies if image is bring your own license

--is-encrypted

Specifies if image is encrypted

Arguments

NAME

Required argument

URI

Required argument

6.17.6 image export

Export an image to object storage.

The URI for an object storage object (.vhd/.iso file) of the format: swift://<objectStorageAccount>@<cluster>/<container>/<objectPath> or cos://<regionName>/<bucketName>/<objectPath> if using IBM Cloud Object Storage

```
image export [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER URI
```

Options

--ibm-api-key <ibm_api_key>

The IBM Cloud API Key with access to IBM Cloud Object Storage instance. For help creating this key see <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/cloud-object-storage?topic=cloud-object-storage-iam-overview#iam-overview-service-id-api-key>

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

URI

Required argument

6.17.7 image datacenter

Add/Remove datacenter of an image.

`image datacenter [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER LOCATIONS...`

Options

--add, --remove

To add or remove Datacenter

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

LOCATIONS

Required argument(s)

6.18 Interacting with IPSEC Tunnels

The IPSEC *Command-line Interface* commands can be used to configure an existing IPSEC tunnel context. Subnets in the SoftLayer private network can be associated to the tunnel context along with user-defined remote subnets. Address translation entries may also be defined to provide NAT functionality from static subnet IP addresses associated with the tunnel context to user-defined remote subnet IP addresses.

Note: Most CLI actions that affect an IPSEC tunnel context do not result in configuration changes to SoftLayer network devices. A separate *configure* command is available to issue a device configuration request.

To see more information about the IPSEC tunnel context module and API interaction, see *IPSEC Module* documentation.

6.18.1 ipsec list

ipsec list

List IPSEC VPN tunnel contexts

```
ipsec list [OPTIONS]
```

A list of all IPSEC tunnel contexts associated with the current user's account can be retrieved via the `ipsec list` command. This provides a brief overview of all tunnel contexts and can be used to retrieve an individual context's identifier, which all other CLI commands require.

```
$ slcli ipsec list
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪ :.....:
: id :   name   : friendly name : internal peer IP address : remote peer IP address :
↪   created      :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪ :.....:
: 445 : ipsec038 : ipsec tunnel :      173.192.250.79      :      158.85.80.22      :
↪ 2012-03-05T14:07:34-06:00 :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪ :.....:
```

6.18.2 ipsec detail

ipsec detail

List IPSEC VPN tunnel context details.

Additional resources can be joined using multiple instances of the `include` option, for which the following choices are available.

at: address translations
 is: internal subnets
 rs: remote subnets
 sr: statically routed subnets
 ss: service subnets

```
ipsec detail [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-i, --include <include>
Include additional resources

Options at | is | rs | sr | ss

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

More detailed information can be retrieved for an individual context using the `ipsec detail` command. Using the detail command, information about associated internal subnets, remote subnets, static subnets, service subnets and address translations may also be retrieved using multiple instances of the `-i|--include` option.

```
$ slcli ipsec detail 445 -i at -i is -i rs -i sr -i ss
Context Details:
:.....:
:              name : value              :
:.....:
:              id : 445                   :
:              name : ipsec038            :
:      friendly name : ipsec tunnel        :
:      internal peer IP address : 173.192.250.79 :
:      remote peer IP address : 158.85.80.22   :
:      advanced configuration flag : 0              :
:              preshared key : secret         :
:      phase 1 authentication : MD5            :
:      phase 1 diffie hellman group : 0              :
:              phase 1 encryption : DES            :
:              phase 1 key life : 240            :
:      phase 2 authentication : MD5            :
:      phase 2 diffie hellman group : 1              :
:              phase 2 encryption : DES            :
:              phase 2 key life : 240            :
:      phase 2 perfect forward secrecy : 1              :
:              created : 2012-03-05T14:07:34-06:00 :
:              modified : 2017-05-17T12:01:33-06:00 :
:.....:
Address Translations:
:.....:
↪.....:
:      id : static IP address : static IP address id : remote IP address : remote IP
↪address id :      note      :
:.....:
↪.....:
: 15920 :      10.1.249.86      :      9791681      :      158.85.80.22      :      98828      ↪
↪      : windows server :
: 15918 :      10.1.249.84      :      9791679      :      158.85.80.20      :      98824      ↪
↪      : unix server :
:.....:
↪.....:
Internal Subnets:
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

:.....:
:  id   : network identifier : cidr : note :
:.....:
: 180767 :    10.28.67.128      : 26  :      :
:.....:
Remote Subnets:
:.....:
:  id   : network identifier : cidr : note :
:.....:
: 7852  :    158.85.80.20      : 30  :      :
:.....:
Static Subnets:
:.....:
:  id   : network identifier : cidr : note :
:.....:
: 231807 :    10.1.249.84       : 30  :      :
:.....:
Service Subnets:
:.....:
:  id   : network identifier : cidr : note :
:.....:
: 162079 :    10.0.80.0         : 25  :      :
:.....:

```

6.18.3 ipsec update

ipsec update

Update tunnel context properties.

Updates are made atomically, so either all are accepted or none are.

Key life values must be in the range 120-172800.

Phase 2 perfect forward secrecy must be in the range 0-1.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec update [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

```

--friendly-name <friendly_name>
    Friendly name value

--remote-peer <remote_peer>
    Remote peer IP address value

--preshared-key <preshared_key>
    Preshared key value

--phase1-auth, --p1-auth <phase1_auth>
    Phase 1 authentication value

```

Options MD5 | SHA1 | SHA256

--phase1-crypto, --p1-crypto <phase1_crypto>
Phase 1 encryption value

Options DES | 3DES | AES128 | AES192 | AES256

--phase1-dh, --p1-dh <phase1_dh>
Phase 1 diffie hellman group value

Options 0 | 1 | 2 | 5

--phase1-key-ttl, --p1-key-ttl <phase1_key_ttl>
Phase 1 key life value

--phase2-auth, --p2-auth <phase2_auth>
Phase 2 authentication value

Options MD5 | SHA1 | SHA256

--phase2-crypto, --p2-crypto <phase2_crypto>
Phase 2 encryption value

Options DES | 3DES | AES128 | AES192 | AES256

--phase2-dh, --p2-dh <phase2_dh>
Phase 2 diffie hellman group value

Options 0 | 1 | 2 | 5

--phase2-forward-secrecy, --p2-forward-secrecy <phase2_forward_secrecy>
Phase 2 perfect forward secrecy value

--phase2-key-ttl, --p2-key-ttl <phase2_key_ttl>
Phase 2 key life value

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Most values listed in the tunnel context detail printout can be modified using the `ipsec update` command. The following is given when executing with the `-h` or `--help` option and highlights all properties that may be modified.

```
$ slcli ipsec update -h
Usage: slcli ipsec update [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID

Update tunnel context properties.

Updates are made atomically, so either all are accepted or none are.

Key life values must be in the range 120-172800.

Phase 2 perfect forward secrecy must be in the range 0-1.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on
network devices.

Options:
  --friendly-name TEXT      Friendly name value
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

--remote-peer TEXT           Remote peer IP address value
--preshared-key TEXT         Preshared key value
--p1-auth, --phase1-auth [MD5|SHA1|SHA256]
                             Phase 1 authentication value
--p1-crypto, --phase1-crypto [DES|3DES|AES128|AES192|AES256]
                             Phase 1 encryption value
--p1-dh, --phase1-dh [0|1|2|5] Phase 1 diffie hellman group value
--p1-key-ttl, --phase1-key-ttl INTEGER RANGE
                             Phase 1 key life value
--p2-auth, --phase2-auth [MD5|SHA1|SHA256]
                             Phase 2 authentication value
--p2-crypto, --phase2-crypto [DES|3DES|AES128|AES192|AES256]
                             Phase 2 encryption value
--p2-dh, --phase2-dh [0|1|2|5] Phase 2 diffie hellman group value
--p2-forward-secrecy, --phase2-forward-secrecy INTEGER RANGE
                             Phase 2 perfect forward secrecy value
--p2-key-ttl, --phase2-key-ttl INTEGER RANGE
                             Phase 2 key life value
-h, --help                  Show this message and exit.

```

6.18.4 ipsec configure

ipsec configure

Request configuration of a tunnel context.

This action will update the advancedConfigurationFlag on the context instance and further modifications against the context will be prevented until all changes can be propagated to network devices.

```
ipsec configure [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

A request to configure SoftLayer network devices for a given tunnel context can be issued using the `ipsec configure` command.

Note: Once a configuration request is received, the IPSEC tunnel context will be placed into an unmodifiable state, and further changes against the tunnel context will be prevented. Once configuration changes have been made, the tunnel context may again be modified. The unmodifiable state of a tunnel context is indicated by an *advanced configuration flag* value of 1.

6.18.5 ipsec subnet-add

ipsec subnet-add

Add a subnet to an IPSEC tunnel context.

A subnet id may be specified to link to the existing tunnel context.

Otherwise, a network identifier in CIDR notation should be specified, indicating that a subnet resource should first be created before associating it with the tunnel context. Note that this is only supported for remote subnets, which are also deleted upon failure to attach to a context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec subnet-add [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-s, --subnet-id <subnet_id>

Subnet identifier to add

-t, --subnet-type, --type <subnet_type>

Required Subnet type to add

Options internal | remote | service

-n, --network-identifier, --network <network_identifier>

Subnet network identifier to create

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Internal, remote and service subnets can be associated to an IPSEC tunnel context using the `ipsec subnet-add` command. Additionally, remote subnets can be created using this same command, which will then be associated to the targeted tunnel context.

Note: The targeted subnet type must be specified. A subnet id must be provided when associating internal and service subnets. Either a subnet id or a network identifier must be provided when associating remote subnets. If a network identifier is provided when associating a remote subnet, that subnet will first be created and then associated to the tunnel context.

The following is an example of associating an internal subnet to a tunnel context.

```
$ slcli ipsec subnet-add 445 --subnet-id 180767 --subnet-type internal
Added internal subnet #180767
```

The following is an example of creating and associating a remote subnet to a tunnel context.

```
$ slcli ipsec subnet-add 445 --subnet-type remote --network 50.100.0.0/26
Created subnet 50.100.0.0/26 #21268
Added remote subnet #21268
```

6.18.6 ipsec subnet-remove

ipsec subnet-remove

Remove a subnet from an IPSEC tunnel context.

The subnet id to remove must be specified.

Remote subnets are deleted upon removal from a tunnel context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec subnet-remove [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-s, --subnet-id <subnet_id>
Required Subnet identifier to remove

-t, --subnet-type, --type <subnet_type>
Required Subnet type to add

Options internal | remote | service

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID
 Required argument

Internal, remote and service subnets can be disassociated from an IPSEC tunnel context via the `ipsec subnet-remove` command.

Note: The targeted subnet id and type must be specified. When disassociating remote subnets, that subnet record will also be deleted.

The following is an example of disassociating an internal subnet from a tunnel context.

```
$ slcli ipsec subnet-remove 445 --subnet-id 180767 --subnet-type internal
Removed internal subnet #180767
```

6.18.7 ipsec translation-add

ipsec translation-add

Add an address translation to an IPSEC tunnel context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec translation-add [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-s, --static-ip <static_ip>
Required Static IP address value

-r, --remote-ip <remote_ip>
Required Remote IP address value

-n, --note <note>
Note value

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID
Required argument

Address translation entries can be added to a tunnel context to provide NAT functionality from a statically routed subnet associated with the tunnel context to a remote subnet. This action is performed with the `ipsec translation-add` command.

Note: Both static and remote IP address values must be specified. An optional note value may also be provided.

The following is an example of adding a new address translation entry.

```
$ slcli ipsec translation-add 445 --static-ip 10.1.249.87 --remote-ip 50.100.0.10 --note  
→ 'email server'  
Created translation from 10.1.249.87 to 50.100.0.10 #15922
```

6.18.8 ipsec translation-remove

ipsec translation-remove

Remove a translation entry from an IPSEC tunnel context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec translation-remove [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-t, --translation-id <translation_id>
Required Translation identifier to remove

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Address translation entries can be removed using the `ipsec translation-remove` command.

The following is an example of removing an address translation entry.

```
$ slcli ipsec translation-remove 445 --translation-id 15922
Removed translation #15922
```

6.18.9 ipsec translation-update

ipsec translation-update

Update an address translation for an IPSEC tunnel context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec translation-update [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-t, --translation-id <translation_id>

Required Translation identifier to update

-s, --static-ip <static_ip>

Static IP address value

-r, --remote-ip <remote_ip>

Remote IP address value

-n, --note <note>

Note value

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Address translation entries may also be modified using the `ipsec translation-update` command.

The following is an example of updating an existing address translation entry.

```
$ slcli ipsec translation-update 445 --translation-id 15924 --static-ip 10.1.249.86 --
↪remote-ip 50.100.0.8 --note 'new email server'
Updated translation #15924
```

6.19 licenses Commands

6.19.1 licenses create-options

Server order options for a given chassis.

```
licenses create-options [OPTIONS]
```

6.19.2 licenses create

Order/Create License.

```
licenses create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-k, --key <key>

Required The VMware License Key. To get could use the `product_package::getItems id=301` with name Software License PackageE.g `VMWARE_VSAN_ENTERPRISE_TIER_III_65_124_TB_6_X_2`

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Required Datacenter shortname

6.19.3 licenses cancel

Cancel a license.

```
licenses cancel [OPTIONS] KEY
```

Options

--immediate

Immediate cancellation

Arguments

KEY

Required argument

6.20 LoadBalancers

These commands were added in version 5.8.0

6.20.1 LBaaS Commands

- [LBaaS Product](#)
- [LBaaS Documentation](#)

loadbal detail

Get Load Balancer as a Service details.

```
loadbal detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal list

List active Load Balancer as a Service devices.

```
loadbal list [OPTIONS]
```

loadbal health

Manage LBaaS health checks.

```
loadbal health [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- uuid** <uuid>
Required Health check UUID to modify.
- i, --interval** <interval>
Seconds between checks. [2-60]
- r, --retry** <retry>
Number of times before marking as DOWN. [1-10]
- t, --timeout** <timeout>
Seconds to wait for a connection. [1-59]
- u, --url** <url>
Url path for HTTP/HTTPS checks.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal member-add

Add a new LBaaS members.

```
loadbal member-add [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--private, --public

Required Private or public IP of the new member.

-m, --member <member>

Required Member IP address.

-w, --weight <weight>

Weight of this member.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal member-del

Remove a LBaaS member.

Member UUID can be found from *slcli lb detail*.

```
loadbal member-del [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-m, --member <member>

Required Member UUID

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal pool-add

Adds a listener to the identifier LB

```
loadbal pool-add [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- P, --frontProtocol <frontprotocol>**
Protocol type to use for incoming connections
Default HTTP
Options HTTP | HTTPS | TCP
- p, --backProtocol <backprotocol>**
Protocol type to use when connecting to backend servers. Defaults to whatever `--frontProtocol` is.
Options HTTP | HTTPS | TCP
- f, --frontPort <frontport>**
Required Internet side port
- b, --backPort <backport>**
Required Private side port
- m, --method <method>**
Balancing Method
Default ROUNDROBIN
Options ROUNDROBIN | LEASTCONNECTION | WEIGHTED_RR
- c, --connections <connections>**
Maximum number of connections to allow.
- s, --sticky**
Make sessions sticky based on source_ip.
- x, --sslCert <sslcert>**
SSL certificate ID. See *slcli ssl list*

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

loadbal pool-edit

Updates a listener's configuration.

LISTENER should be a UUID, and can be found from *slcli lb detail <IDENTIFIER>*

```
loadbal pool-edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER LISTENER
```

Options

- P, --frontProtocol <frontprotocol>**
Protocol type to use for incoming connections
Options HTTP | HTTPS | TCP
- p, --backProtocol <backprotocol>**
Protocol type to use when connecting to backend servers. Defaults to whatever `--frontProtocol` is.
Options HTTP | HTTPS | TCP
- f, --frontPort <frontport>**
Internet side port
- b, --backPort <backport>**
Private side port
- m, --method <method>**
Balancing Method
Options ROUNDROBIN | LEASTCONNECTION | WEIGHTED_RR
- c, --connections <connections>**
Maximum number of connections to allow.
- t, --clientTimeout <clienttimeout>**
maximum idle time in seconds(Range: 1 to 7200).
- s, --sticky**
Make sessions sticky based on source_ip.
- x, --sslCert <sslcert>**
SSL certificate ID. See *slcli ssl list*

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

LISTENER
Required argument

loadbal pool-del

Removes the listener from identified LBaaS instance

LISTENER should be a UUID, and can be found from *slcli lb detail <IDENTIFIER>*

<code>loadbal pool-del [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER LISTENER</code>

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

LISTENER

Required argument

loadbal l7pool-add

Adds a new l7 pool

-S is in colon delimited format to make grouping IP:port:weight a bit easier.

```
loadbal l7pool-add [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-n, --name <name>

Required Name for this L7 pool.

-m, --method <method>

Balancing Method.

Default ROUNDROBIN

Options ROUNDROBIN | LEASTCONNECTION | WEIGHTED_RR

-P, --protocol <protocol>

Protocol type to use for incoming connections

Default HTTP

Options HTTP | HTTPS

-S, --server <server>

Required Backend servers that are part of this pool. Format is colon delimited. BACK-END_IP:PORT:WEIGHT. eg. 10.0.0.1:80:50 (multiple occurrence permitted)

--healthPath <healthpath>

Health check path.

Default /

--healthInterval <healthinterval>

Health check interval between checks.

Default 5

--healthRetry <healthretry>

Health check number of times before marking as DOWN.

Default 2

--healthTimeout <healthtimeout>

Health check timeout.

Default 2

-s, --sticky

Make sessions sticky based on source_ip.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal l7pool-del

Deletes the identified pool

Identifier is L7Pool Id. NOT the UUID

```
loadbal l7pool-del [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal order

Creates a LB. Protocols supported are TCP, HTTP, and HTTPS.

```
loadbal order [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- n, --name <name>**
Required Label for this loadbalancer.
- d, --datacenter <datacenter>**
Required Datacenter shortname (dal13).
- l, --label <label>**
A descriptive label for this loadbalancer.
- f, --frontend <frontend>**
Required PROTOCOL:PORT string for incoming internet connections.
Default HTTP:80
- b, --backend <backend>**
Required PROTOCOL:PORT string for connecting to backend servers.
Default HTTP:80
- m, --method <method>**
Balancing Method.
Default ROUNDROBIN
Options ROUNDROBIN | LEASTCONNECTION | WEIGHTED_RR
- s, --subnet <subnet>**
Required Private subnet Id to order the LB on. See *slcli lb order-options*
- public**
Use a Public to Public loadbalancer.

Default False

--verify

Only verify an order, dont actually create one.

Default False

loadbal order-options

Prints options for order a LBaaS

```
loadbal order-options [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Show only selected datacenter, use shortname (dal13) format.

loadbal cancel

Cancels a LBaaS instance

```
loadbal cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.20.2 NetScaler Commands

loadbal ns-detail

Get Netscaler details.

```
loadbal ns-detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal ns-list

List active Netscaler devices.

```
loadbal ns-list [OPTIONS]
```

6.21 NAS Commands

6.21.1 nas list

List NAS accounts.

```
nas list [OPTIONS]
```

6.21.2 nas credentials

List NAS account credentials.

```
nas credentials [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.22 Object Storage Commands

6.22.1 object-storage accounts

List object storage accounts.

```
object-storage accounts [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--limit <limit>

Result limit

6.22.2 object-storage endpoints

List object storage endpoints.

```
object-storage endpoints [OPTIONS]
```

6.22.3 object-storage credential list

Retrieve credentials used for generating an AWS signature. Max of 2.

```
object-storage credential list [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.22.4 object-storage credential limit

Credential limits for this IBM Cloud Object Storage account.

```
object-storage credential limit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.22.5 object-storage credential delete

Delete the credential of an Object Storage Account.

```
object-storage credential delete [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-c, --credential_id <credential_id>

This is the credential id associated with the volume

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.22.6 object-storage credential create

Create credentials for an IBM Cloud Object Storage Account

```
object-storage credential create [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.23 Ordering

The Order *Command-line Interface* commands can be used to build an order for any product in the SoftLayer catalog.

The basic flow for ordering goes something like this...

1. package-list
2. category-list <package key name>
3. item-list <package key name>
4. place <package key name> <item key names> <location>

6.23.1 order package-list

List packages that can be ordered via the placeOrder API.

```
# List out all packages for ordering
slcli order package-list

# List out all packages with "server" in the name
slcli order package-list --keyword server

# Select only specifict package types
slcli order package-list --package_type BARE_METAL_CPU
```

```
order package-list [OPTIONS]
```


Options

--keyword <keyword>

A word (or string) used to filter package names.

--package_type <package_type>

The keyname for the type of package. BARE_METAL_CPU for example

Note:

- CLOUD_SERVER: These are Virtual Servers
- BARE_METAL_INSTANCE: Hourly Bare Metal
- BARE_METAL_SERVER: Other monthly server types
- `#_PROC#_DRIVES`: Packages in this format will contain only this CPU model and Drive bays
- ADDITIONAL_PRODUCTS: Additional IPs, Vlans, SSL certs and other things are in here
- NETWORK_GATEWAY_APPLIANCE: Vyattas

Bluemix services listed here may still need to be ordered through the Bluemix CLI/Portal

6.23.2 order package-locations

List Datacenters a package can be ordered in.

Use the location Key Name to place orders

```
order package-locations [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME
```

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

Required argument

6.23.3 order category-list

List the categories of a package.

```
# List the categories of Bare Metal servers
slcli order category-list BARE_METAL_SERVER

# List the required categories for Bare Metal servers
slcli order category-list BARE_METAL_SERVER --required
```

```
order category-list [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME
```

Options

--required

List only the required categories for the package

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

Required argument

Shows all the available categories for a certain package, useful in finding the required categories. Categories that are required will need to have a corresponding item included with any orders

These are all the required categories for BARE_METAL_SERVER

```
$ slcli order category-list BARE_METAL_SERVER
:.....:
:      name      :      categoryCode      : isRequired :
:.....:
:      Server     :      server     :      Y      :
:      Operating System :      os      :      Y      :
:      RAM        :      ram        :      Y      :
:      Disk Controller :      disk_controller :      Y      :
:      First Hard Drive :      disk0      :      Y      :
:      Public Bandwidth :      bandwidth  :      Y      :
:      Uplink Port Speeds :      port_speed :      Y      :
:      Remote Management :      remote_management :      Y      :
:      Primary IP Addresses :      pri_ip_addresses :      Y      :
:      VPN Management - Private Network :      vpn_management :      Y      :
:.....:
```

6.23.4 order item-list

List package items used for ordering.

The item keyNames listed can be used with *slcli order place* to specify the items that are being ordered in the package.

Note: Items with a numbered category, like disk0 or gpu0, can be included multiple times in an order to match how many of the item you want to order.

```
# List all items in the VSI package
slcli order item-list CLOUD_SERVER

# List Ubuntu OSes from the os category of the Bare Metal package
slcli order item-list BARE_METAL_SERVER --category os --keyword ubuntu
```

```
order item-list [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME [LOCATION]
```

Options

- k, --keyword <keyword>**
A word (or string) used to filter item names.
- c, --category <category>**
Category code to filter items by
- p, --prices**
Use `--prices` to list the server item prices, and to list the Item Prices by location, add it to the `--prices` option using location KeyName, e.g. `--prices AMSTERDAM02`

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

Required argument

LOCATION

Optional argument

Shows all the prices for a given package. Collect all the items you want included on your server. Don't forget to include the required category items. If forgotten, order place will tell you about it.

6.23.5 order preset-list

List package presets.

Note: Presets are set CPU / RAM / Disk allotments. You still need to specify required items. Some packages do not have presets.

```
# List the presets for Bare Metal servers
slcli order preset-list BARE_METAL_SERVER

# List the Bare Metal server presets that include a GPU
slcli order preset-list BARE_METAL_SERVER --keyword gpu
```

```
order preset-list [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME
```

Options

- keyword <keyword>**
A word (or string) used to filter preset names.

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

Required argument

6.23.6 order place

Place or verify an order.

1. Find the package keyName from *slcli order package-list*
2. Find the location from *slcli order package-locations PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER*
If the package does not require a location, use 'NONE' instead.
3. Find the needed items *slcli order item-list PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER*
Some packages, like PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER need presets, *slcli order preset-list PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER*
4. Find the complex type from <https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference>
5. Use that complex type to fill out any `--extras`

Example:

```
slcli order place --verify --preset B1_2X8X100 --billing hourly
--complex-type SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Virtual_Guest
--extras '{"virtualGuests": [{"hostname": "test", "domain": "ibm.com"}]}'
PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER DALLAS13
BANDWIDTH_0_GB_2 MONITORING_HOST_PING NOTIFICATION_EMAIL_AND_TICKET
OS_DEBIAN_9_X_STRETCH_LAMP_64_BIT 1_IP_ADDRESS 1_IPV6_ADDRESS
1_GBPS_PUBLIC_PRIVATE_NETWORK_UPLINKS REBOOT_REMOTE_CONSOLE
AUTOMATED_NOTIFICATION UNLIMITED_SSL_VPN_USERS_1_PPTP_VPN_USER_PER_ACCOUNT
```

```
order place [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME LOCATION [ORDER_ITEMS]...
```

Options

--preset <preset>

The order preset (if required by the package)

--verify

Flag denoting whether or not to only verify the order, not place it

--quantity <quantity>

The quantity of the item being ordered

--billing <billing>

Billing rate

Default hourly

Options hourly | monthly

--complex-type <complex_type>

The complex type of the order. Starts with 'SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order'.

--extras <extras>

JSON string denoting extra data that needs to be sent with the order

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

Required argument

LOCATION

Required argument

ORDER_ITEMS

Optional argument(s)

Now that you have the package you want, the prices needed, and found a location, it is time to place an order.

6.23.7 order place <preset>

```
$ slcli --really order place --preset D2620V4_64GB_2X1TB_SATA_RAID_1 BARE_METAL_SERVER \
↳TORONTO \
  OS_UBUNTU_16_04_LTS_XENIAL_XERUS_64_BIT \
  BANDWIDTH_0_GB_2 \
  1_GBPS_PRIVATE_NETWORK_UPLINK \
  REBOOT_KVM_OVER_IP 1_IP_ADDRESS \
  UNLIMITED_SSL_VPN_USERS_1_PPTP_VPN_USER_PER_ACCOUNT \
  --extras '{"hardware": [{"hostname": "testOrder", "domain": "cgallo.com"}]}' \
  --complex-type SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Hardware_Server
```

6.23.8 order place <Virtual Server>

```
$ slcli order place --billing hourly CLOUD_SERVER DALLAS13 \
  GUEST_CORES_4 \
  RAM_16_GB \
  REBOOT_REMOTE_CONSOLE \
  1_GBPS_PUBLIC_PRIVATE_NETWORK_UPLINKS \
  BANDWIDTH_0_GB_2 \
  1_IP_ADDRESS \
  GUEST_DISK_100_GB_SAN \
  OS_UBUNTU_16_04_LTS_XENIAL_XERUS_MINIMAL_64_BIT_FOR_VSI \
  MONITORING_HOST_PING \
  NOTIFICATION_EMAIL_AND_TICKET \
  AUTOMATED_NOTIFICATION \
  UNLIMITED_SSL_VPN_USERS_1_PPTP_VPN_USER_PER_ACCOUNT \
  --extras '{"virtualGuests": [{"hostname": "test", "domain": "softlayer.com"}]}' \
  --complex-type SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Virtual_Guest
```

6.24 Quotes

6.24.1 order quote

View and Order a quote

order quote [OPTIONS] QUOTE

Options

--verify

If specified, will only show what the quote will order, will NOT place an order

Default False

--quantity <quantity>

The quantity of the item being ordered if different from quoted value

--complex-type <complex_type>

The complex type of the order. Starts with 'SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order'.

Default SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Hardware_Server

-u, --userdata <userdata>

User defined metadata string

-F, --userfile <userfile>

Read userdata from file

-i, --postinstall <postinstall>

Post-install script to download

-k, --key <key>

SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)

--fqdn <fqdn>

Required <hostname>.<domain.name.tld> formatted name to use. Specify one fqdn per server (multiple occurrence permitted)

--image <image>

Image ID. See: 'slcli image list' for reference

Arguments

QUOTE

Required argument

6.24.2 order quote-list

List all active quotes on an account

```
order quote-list [OPTIONS]
```

6.24.3 order quote-detail

View a quote

```
order quote-detail [OPTIONS] QUOTE
```

Arguments

QUOTE

Required argument

6.24.4 order quote-save

Save a quote

```
order quote-save [OPTIONS] QUOTE
```

Arguments

QUOTE

Required argument

6.24.5 order place-quote

Place a quote.

This CLI command is used for creating a quote of the specified package in the given location (denoted by a data-center's long name). Orders made via the CLI can then be converted to be made programmatically by calling `SoftLayer.OrderingManager.place_quote()` with the same keynames.

Packages for ordering can be retrieved from *slcli order package-list*. Presets for ordering can be retrieved from *slcli order preset-list* (not all packages have presets)

Items can be retrieved from *slcli order item-list*. In order to find required items for the order, use *slcli order category-list*, and then provide the `--category` option for each category code in *slcli order item-list*.

Example:

```
# Place quote a VSI with 4 CPU, 16 GB RAM, 100 GB SAN disk,
# Ubuntu 16.04, and 1 Gbps public & private uplink in dal13
slcli order place-quote --name "foobar" --send-email CLOUD_SERVER DALLAS13 \
    GUEST_CORES_4 \
    RAM_16_GB \
    REBOOT_REMOTE_CONSOLE \
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

1_GBPS_PUBLIC_PRIVATE_NETWORK_UPLINKS \
BANDWIDTH_0_GB_2 \
1_IP_ADDRESS \
GUEST_DISK_100_GB_SAN \
OS_UBUNTU_16_04_LTS_XENIAL_XERUS_MINIMAL_64_BIT_FOR_VSI \
MONITORING_HOST_PING \
NOTIFICATION_EMAIL_AND_TICKET \
AUTOMATED_NOTIFICATION \
UNLIMITED_SSL_VPN_USERS_1_PPTP_VPN_USER_PER_ACCOUNT \
--extras '{"virtualGuests": [{"hostname": "test", "domain": "softlayer.com"}]}' \
--complex-type SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Virtual_Guest

```

```
order place-quote [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME LOCATION [ORDER_ITEMS]...
```

Options

--preset <preset>
The order preset (if required by the package)

--name <name>
A custom name to be assigned to the quote (optional)

--send-email
The quote will be sent to the email address associated with your user.

--complex-type <complex_type>
The complex type of the order. Starts with 'SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order'.

--extras <extras>
JSON string denoting extra data that needs to be sent with the order

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME
Required argument

LOCATION
Required argument

ORDER_ITEMS
Optional argument(s)

6.25 Lookup

6.25.1 order lookup

Provides some details related to order owner, date order, cost information, initial invoice.

```
order lookup [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```


Options

--details

Shows a very detailed list of charges

Default False

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.26 Reports

There are a few report type commands in the SLCLI.

6.26.1 summary

Account summary.

```
summary [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options datacenter | hardware | virtual_servers | vlans | subnets | public_ips

A list of datacenters, and how many servers, VSI, vlans, subnets and public_ips are in each.

6.26.2 report bandwidth

Bandwidth report for every pool/server.

This reports on the total data transfered for each virtual sever, hardware server and bandwidth pool.

```
report bandwidth [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--start <start>

datetime in the format 'YYYY-MM-DD' or 'YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS'

--end <end>

datetime in the format 'YYYY-MM-DD' or 'YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS'

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Default hostname

--virtual

Show the all bandwidth summary for each virtual server

--server

show the all bandwidth summary for each hardware server

6.27 Security Groups

6.27.1 securitygroup list

List security groups.

```
securitygroup list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options id | name | description

-l, --limit <limit>

How many results to get in one api call, default is 100

Default 100

6.27.2 securitygroup detail

Get details about a security group.

```
securitygroup detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.27.3 securitygroup create

Create a security group.

```
securitygroup create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- n, --name** <name>
The name of the security group
- d, --description** <description>
The description of the security group

6.27.4 securitygroup edit

Edit details of a security group.

```
securitygroup edit [OPTIONS] GROUP_ID
```

Options

- n, --name** <name>
The name of the security group
- d, --description** <description>
The description of the security group

Arguments

GROUP_ID
Required argument

6.27.5 securitygroup delete

Deletes the given security group

```
securitygroup delete [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID
Required argument

6.27.6 securitygroup rule-list

List security group rules.

```
securitygroup rule-list [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>
Column to sort by

Options id | remoteIp | remoteGroupId | direction | ethertype | portRangeMin | portRangeMax | protocol | createDate | modifyDate

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID
Required argument

6.27.7 securitygroup rule-add

Add a security group rule to a security group.

Examples:

```
# Add an SSH rule (TCP port 22) to a security group
slcli sg rule-add 384727
    -direction ingress
    -protocol tcp
    -port-min 22
    -port-max 22
```

```
# Add a ping rule (ICMP type 8 code 0) to a security group
slcli sg rule-add 384727
    -direction ingress
    -protocol icmp
    -port-min 8
    -port-max 0
```

`securitygroup rule-add [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID`

Options

-r, --remote-ip <remote_ip>
The remote IP/CIDR to enforce

-s, --remote-group <remote_group>
The ID of the remote security group to enforce

-d, --direction <direction>
The direction of traffic to enforce (ingress, egress)

-e, --ethertype <ethertype>
The ethertype (IPv4 or IPv6) to enforce

- M, --port-max <port_max>**
The upper port bound to enforce. When the protocol is ICMP, this specifies the ICMP code to permit
- m, --port-min <port_min>**
The lower port bound to enforce. When the protocol is ICMP, this specifies the ICMP type to permit
- p, --protocol <protocol>**
The protocol (icmp, tcp, udp) to enforce

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID
Required argument

6.27.8 securitygroup rule-edit

Edit a security group rule in a security group.

```
securitygroup rule-edit [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID RULE_ID
```

Options

- r, --remote-ip <remote_ip>**
The remote IP/CIDR to enforce
- s, --remote-group <remote_group>**
The ID of the remote security group to enforce
- d, --direction <direction>**
The direction of traffic to enforce
- e, --ethertype <ethertype>**
The ethertype (IPv4 or IPv6) to enforce
- M, --port-max <port_max>**
The upper port bound to enforce
- m, --port-min <port_min>**
The lower port bound to enforce
- p, --protocol <protocol>**
The protocol (icmp, tcp, udp) to enforce

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID
Required argument

RULE_ID
Required argument

6.27.9 securitygroup rule-remove

Remove a rule from a security group.

```
securitygroup rule-remove [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID RULE_ID
```

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID

Required argument

RULE_ID

Required argument

6.27.10 securitygroup interface-list

List interfaces associated with security groups.

```
securitygroup interface-list [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options networkComponentId | virtualServerId | hostname | interface | ipAddress

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID

Required argument

6.27.11 securitygroup interface-add

Attach an interface to a security group.

```
securitygroup interface-add [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Options

-n, --network-component <network_component>

The network component to associate with the security group

-s, --server <server>

The server ID to associate with the security group

-i, --interface <interface>

The interface of the server to associate (public/private)

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID

Required argument

6.27.12 securitygroup interface-remove

Detach an interface from a security group.

```
securitygroup interface-remove [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Options

-n, --network-component <network_component>

The network component to remove from with the security group

-s, --server <server>

The server ID to remove from the security group

-i, --interface <interface>

The interface of the server to remove (public/private)

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID

Required argument

6.27.13 securitygroup event-log

Search for event logs by request id

```
securitygroup event-log [OPTIONS] REQUEST_ID
```

Arguments

REQUEST_ID

Required argument

6.28 SSH Keys

6.28.1 sshkey add

Add a new SSH key.

```
sshkey add [OPTIONS] LABEL
```

Options

- f, --in-file <in_file>**
The id_rsa.pub file to import for this key
- k, --key <key>**
The actual SSH key
- note <note>**
Extra note that will be associated with key

Arguments

- LABEL**
Required argument

6.28.2 sshkey remove

Permanently removes an SSH key.

```
sshkey remove [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

- IDENTIFIER**
Required argument

6.28.3 sshkey edit

Edits an SSH key.

```
sshkey edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- k, --label <label>**
The new label for the key
- note <note>**
New notes for the key

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.28.4 sshkey list

List SSH keys.

```
sshkey list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options id | label | fingerprint | notes

6.28.5 sshkey print

Prints out an SSH key to the screen.

```
sshkey print [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-f, --out-file <out_file>

The public SSH key will be written to this file

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.29 SSL Certificates

6.29.1 ssl add

Add and upload SSL certificate details.

```
ssl add [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--crt <crt>
Certificate file

--csr <csr>
Certificate Signing Request file

--icc <icc>
Intermediate Certificate file

--key <key>
Private Key file

--notes <notes>
Additional notes

6.29.2 ssl download

Download SSL certificate and key file.

```
ssl download [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.29.3 ssl edit

Edit SSL certificate.

```
ssl edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--crt <crt>
Certificate file

--csr <csr>
Certificate Signing Request file

--icc <icc>
Intermediate Certificate file

--key <key>
Private Key file

--notes <notes>
Additional notes

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.29.4 ssl list

List SSL certificates.

```
ssl list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--status <status>

Show certificates with this status

Default all

Options all | valid | expired

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options id | common_name | days_until_expire | notes

6.29.5 ssl remove

Remove SSL certificate.

```
ssl remove [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.30 Subnets

6.30.1 subnet cancel

Cancel a subnet.

```
subnet cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.30.2 subnet create

Add a new subnet to your account. Valid quantities vary by type.

IPv4

static - 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256

public - 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256

private - 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256

IPv6

static - 64

public - 64

endpoint-id

static - Network_Subnet_IpAddress identifier.

public - Network_Vlan identifier

private - Network_Vlan identifier

```
subnet create [OPTIONS] {static|public|private} QUANTITY ENDPOINT_ID
```

Options

--ipv6, --v6

Order IPv6 Addresses

--test

Do not order the subnet; just get a quote

Arguments

NETWORK

Required argument

QUANTITY

Required argument

ENDPOINT_ID

Required argument

6.30.3 subnet detail

Get subnet details.

```
subnet detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--no-vs

Hide virtual server listing

--no-hardware

Hide hardware listing

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.30.4 subnet edit

Edit note and tags of a subnet.

```
subnet edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-t, --tags <tags>

Comma separated list of tags, enclosed in quotes. "tag1, tag2"

-n, --note <note>

The note

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.30.5 subnet list

List subnets.

```
subnet list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>
Column to sort by

Options id | identifier | type | network_space | datacenter | vlan_id | IPs | hardware | vs

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>
Filter by datacenter shortname (sng01, dal05, ...)

--identifier <identifier>
Filter by network identifier

-t, --subnet-type <subnet_type>
Filter by subnet type

--network-space <network_space>
Filter by network space

--ipv4, --v4
Display only IPv4 subnets

--ipv6, --v6
Display only IPv6 subnets

6.30.6 subnet lookup

Find an IP address and display its subnet and device info.

```
subnet lookup [OPTIONS] IP_ADDRESS
```

Arguments

IP_ADDRESS
Required argument

6.30.7 subnet edit-ip

Set the note of the ipAddress

```
subnet edit-ip [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--note <note>
set ip address note of subnet

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.31 Tag Commands

These commands will allow you to interact with the **IMS** provier tagging service. The [IBM Global Search and Tagging API](#) can be used to interact with both the **GHOST** provider and **IMS** provider. The **GHOST** provider will handle tags for things outside of the Classic Infrastructure (aka SoftLayer) space.

6.31.1 tags list

List Tags.

```
tags list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --detail

Show information about the resources using this tag.

6.31.2 tags set

Set Tags.

```
tags set [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-t, --tags <tags>

Required Comma seperated list of tags, enclosed in quotes. "tag1, tag2"

-k, --key-name <key_name>

Required Key name of a tag type e.g. GUEST, HARDWARE. See slcli tags taggable output.

-r, --resource-id <resource_id>

Required ID of the object being tagged

6.31.3 tags details

Get details for a Tag. Identifier can be either a name or tag-id

```
tags details [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--name

Assume identifier is a tag name. Useful if your tag name is a number.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.31.4 tags delete

Delete a Tag. Tag names that contain spaces need to be encased in quotes

```
tags delete [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--name

Assume identifier is a tag name. Useful if your tag name is a number.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.31.5 tags taggable

List everything that could be tagged.

```
tags taggable [OPTIONS]
```

6.31.6 tags cleanup

Removes all empty tags.

```
tags cleanup [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --dry-run

Don't delete, just show what will be deleted.

6.32 Support Tickets

The SoftLayer ticket API is used to create “classic” or Infrastructure Support cases. These tickets will still show up in your web portal, but for the more unified case management API, see the [Case Management API](#)

Note: Windows Git-Bash users might run into issues with *ticket create* and *ticket update* if `--body` isn’t used, as it doesn’t report that it is a real TTY to python, so the default editor can not be launched.

6.32.1 ticket create

Create a Infrastructure support ticket.

Will create the ticket with *Some text*.

```
slcli ticket create --body="Some text" --subject-id 1522 --hardware 12345 --title "My
↪New Ticket"
```

Will create the ticket with text from STDIN:

```
cat sometfile.txt | slcli ticket create --subject-id 1003 --virtual 111111 --title
↪"Reboot Me"
```

Will open the default text editor, and once closed, use that text to create the ticket:

```
slcli ticket create --subject-id 1482 --title "Vyatta Questions..."
```

```
ticket create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--title <title>

Required The title of the ticket

--subject-id <subject_id>

Required The subject id to use for the ticket, run ‘slcli ticket subjects’ to get the list

--body <body>

The ticket body

--hardware <hardware_identifier>

The identifier for hardware to attach

--virtual <virtual_identifier>

The identifier for a virtual server to attach

--priority <priority>

Ticket priority, from 1 (Critical) to 4 (Minimal Impact). Only settable with Advanced and Premium support. See <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/support>

Options 1 | 2 | 3 | 4

6.32.2 ticket detail

Get details for a ticket.

```
ticket detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--count <count>
Number of updates
Default 10

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.32.3 ticket list

List tickets.

```
ticket list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--open, --closed
Display only open or closed tickets

6.32.4 ticket update

Adds an update to an existing ticket.

Will update the ticket with *Some text*..

```
slcli ticket update 123456 --body="Some text"
```

Will update the ticket with text from STDIN:

```
cat sometfile.txt | slcli ticket update 123456
```

Will open the default text editor, and once closed, use that text to update the ticket:

```
slcli ticket update 123456
```

```
ticket update [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--body <body>
Text to add to the ticket. STDIN or the default text editor will be used otherwise.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.32.5 ticket upload

Adds an attachment to an existing ticket.

```
ticket upload [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--path <path>
The path of the attachment to be uploaded

--name <name>
The name of the attachment shown in the ticket

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.32.6 ticket subjects

List Subject IDs for ticket creation.

```
ticket subjects [OPTIONS]
```

6.32.7 ticket summary

Summary info about tickets.

```
ticket summary [OPTIONS]
```

6.32.8 ticket attach

Attach devices to a ticket.

```
ticket attach [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- hardware** <hardware_identifier>
The identifier for hardware to attach
- virtual** <virtual_identifier>
The identifier for a virtual server to attach

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.32.9 ticket detach

Detach devices from a ticket.

```
ticket detach [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- hardware** <hardware_identifier>
The identifier for hardware to detach
- virtual** <virtual_identifier>
The identifier for a virtual server to detach

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.33 Users

Version 5.6.0 introduces the ability to interact with user accounts from the cli.

6.33.1 user list

List Users.

```
user list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. [options: id, username, email, displayName, status, hardwareCount, virtualGuestCount, 2FA, classicAPIKey]

Default id,username,email,displayName,2FA,classicAPIKey

6.33.2 user detail

User details.

```
user detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-k, --keys

Show the users API key.

-p, --permissions

Display permissions assigned to this user. Master users will show no permissions

-h, --hardware

Display hardware this user has access to.

-v, --virtual

Display virtual guests this user has access to.

-l, --logins

Show login history of this user for the last 30 days

-e, --events

Show event log for this user.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.33.3 user notifications

My Notifications.

```
user notifications [OPTIONS]
```

6.33.4 user permissions

User Permissions.

```
user permissions [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.33.5 user edit-notifications

Enable or Disable specific notifications for the active user.

Notification names should be enclosed in quotation marks. Example:

```
slcli user edit-notifications --enable 'Order Approved' 'Reload Complete'
```

```
user edit-notifications [OPTIONS] NOTIFICATION...
```

Options

--enable, --disable

Enable (DEFAULT) or Disable selected notification

Arguments

NOTIFICATION

Required argument(s)

6.33.6 user edit-permissions

Enable or Disable specific permissions.

```
user edit-permissions [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--enable, --disable

Enable (DEFAULT) or Disable selected permissions

-p, --permission <permission>

Permission keyName to set, multiple instances allowed. Use keyword ALL to select ALL permissions

-u, --from-user <from_user>

Set permissions to match this user's permissions. Will add then remove the appropriate permissions

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.33.7 user edit-details

Edit a Users details

JSON strings should be enclosed in ' and each item should be enclosed in ""

Example:

```
slcli user edit-details testUser -t '{"firstName": "Test", "lastName": "Testerson"}'
```

```
user edit-details [OPTIONS] USER
```

Options

-t, --template <template>

Required A json string describing https://softlayer.github.io/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_User_Customer/

Arguments

USER

Required argument

6.33.8 user create

Creates a user Users.

Remember to set the permissions and access for this new user.

Example:

```
slcli user create my@email.com -e my@email.com -p generate -a
-t '{"firstName": "Test", "lastName": "Testerson"}'
```

```
user create [OPTIONS] USERNAME
```

Options

- e, --email** <email>
Required Email address for this user. Required for creation.
- p, --password** <password>
Password to set for this user. If no password is provided, user will be sent an email to generate one, which expires in 24 hours. '-p generate' will create a password for you (Requires Python 3.6+). Passwords require 8+ characters, upper and lowercase, a number and a symbol.
- u, --from-user** <from_user>
Base user to use as a template for creating this user. Will default to the user running this command. Information provided in -template supersedes this template.
- t, --template** <template>
A json string describing https://softlayer.github.io/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_User_Customer/

Arguments

USERNAME
Required argument

6.33.9 user delete

Sets a user's status to CANCEL_PENDING, which will immediately disable the account, and will eventually be fully removed from the account by an automated internal process.

Example: slcli user delete userId

`user delete [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER`

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.33.10 user vpn-manual

Enable or disable user vpn subnets manual config

`user vpn-manual [OPTIONS] USER`

Options

--enable, --disable

Enable or disable vpn subnets manual config.

Arguments

USER

Required argument

6.33.11 user vpn-subnet

Add or remove subnets access for a user.

```
user vpn-subnet [OPTIONS] USER SUBNET...
```

Options

--add, --remove

Add or remove access to subnets.

Arguments

USER

Required argument

SUBNET

Required argument(s)

6.34 VLANs

6.34.1 vlan create

Order/create a VLAN instance.

```
vlan create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--name <name>

Vlan name

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Datacenter shortname

-p, --pod <pod>

Pod name. E.g dal05.pod01

--network <network>

Network vlan type

Default public

Options public | private

--billing <billing>

Billing rate

Default hourly

Options hourly | monthly

6.34.2 vlan detail

Get details about a VLAN.

```
vlan detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--no-vs

Hide virtual server listing

--no-hardware

Hide hardware listing

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.34.3 vlan edit

Edit a vlan's details.

```
vlan edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-n, --name <name>

The optional name for this VLAN

-e, --note <note>

The note for this vlan.

-g, --tags <tags>

Tags to set e.g. "tag1,tag2", or empty string to remove all

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.34.4 vlan list

List VLANs.

```
vlan list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options id | number | name | Gateway/Firewall | datacenter | hardware | virtual_servers | public_ips

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Filter by datacenter shortname (sng01, dal05, ...)

-n, --number <number>

Filter by VLAN number

--name <name>

Filter by VLAN name

-l, --limit <limit>

How many results to get in one api call, default is 100

Default 100

6.34.5 vlan cancel

Cancel network VLAN.

```
vlan cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35 Working with Virtual Servers

Using the SoftLayer portal to order virtual servers is fine, but for a number of reasons it's often more convenient to use the command line. For this, you can use SoftLayer's command-line client to make administrative tasks quicker and easier. This page gives an intro to working with SoftLayer virtual servers using SoftLayer's command-line client.

Note: The following assumes that the client is already *configured with valid SoftLayer credentials*.

First, let's list the current virtual servers with `slcli vs list`.

```
$ slcli vs list
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
: id : datacenter :      host      : cores : memory : primary_ip : backend_
↪ip : active_transaction : owner  :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
```

We don't have any virtual servers yet! Let's fix that. Before we can create a virtual server (VS), we need to know what options are available to us: RAM, CPU, operating systems, disk sizes, disk types, datacenters, and so on. Luckily, there's a simple command to show all options: `slcli vs create-options`.

Some values were omitted for brevity

```
$ slcli vs create-options
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
:                                name : value
↪                                :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
:                                datacenter : ams01
↪                                :
:                                : ams03
↪                                :
:                                : wdc07
↪                                :
: flavors (balanced) : B1_1X2X25
↪                                :
:                                : B1_1X2X25
↪                                :
:                                : B1_1X2X100
↪                                :
: cpus (standard) : 1,2,4,8,12,16,32,56
↪                                :
: cpus (dedicated) : 1,2,4,8,16,32,56
↪                                :
: cpus (dedicated host) : 1,2,4,8,12,16,32,56
↪                                :
:                                memory : 1024,2048,4096,6144,8192,12288,16384,32768,49152,
↪65536,131072,247808 :
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

:      memory (dedicated host) : 1024,2048,4096,6144,8192,12288,16384,32768,49152,
↳ 65536,131072,247808      :
:      os (CENTOS) : CENTOS_5_64
↳      :
:      : CENTOS_LATEST_64
↳      :
:      os (CLOUDLINUX) : CLOUDLINUX_5_64
↳      :
:      : CLOUDLINUX_6_64
↳      :
:      : CLOUDLINUX_LATEST
↳      :
:      : CLOUDLINUX_LATEST_64
↳      :
:      os (COREOS) : COREOS_CURRENT_64
↳      :
:      : COREOS_LATEST
↳      :
:      : COREOS_LATEST_64
↳      :
:      os (DEBIAN) : DEBIAN_6_64
↳      :
:      : DEBIAN_LATEST_64
↳      :
:      os (OTHERUNIXLINUX) : OTHERUNIXLINUX_1_64
↳      :
:      : OTHERUNIXLINUX_LATEST
↳      :
:      : OTHERUNIXLINUX_LATEST_64
↳      :
:      os (REDHAT) : REDHAT_5_64
↳      :
:      : REDHAT_6_64
↳      :
:      : REDHAT_7_64
↳      :
:      : REDHAT_LATEST
↳      :
:      : REDHAT_LATEST_64
↳      :
:      san disk(0) : 25,100
↳      :
:      san disk(2) : 10,20,25,30,40,50,75,100,125,150,175,200,250,300,350,
↳ 400,500,750,1000,1500,2000 :
:      local disk(0) : 25,100
↳      :
:      local disk(2) : 25,100,150,200,300
↳      :
: local (dedicated host) disk(0) : 25,100
↳      :
:      nic (dedicated host) : 100,1000
↳      :

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

:.....:
↪.....:

```

Here's the command to create a 2-core virtual server with 1GiB memory, running Ubuntu 14.04 LTS, and that is billed on an hourly basis in the San Jose 1 datacenter using the command *slcli vs create*.

```

$ slcli vs create --hostname=example --domain=softlayer.com -f B1_1X2X25 -o DEBIAN_
↪LATEST_64 --datacenter=ams01 --billing=hourly
This action will incur charges on your account. Continue? [y/N]: y
:.....:
↪:.....:
: ID : FQDN : guid ↪
↪: Order Date :
:.....:
↪:.....:
: 70112999 : testtesttest.test.com : 1abc7afb-9618-4835-89c9-586f3711d8ea : 2019-01-
↪30T17:16:58-06:00 :
:.....:
↪:.....:
:.....:
: OrderId: 12345678 :
:.....:
: Cost : Description :
:.....:
: 0.0 : Debian GNU/Linux 9.x Stretch/Stable - Minimal Install (64 bit) :
: 0.0 : 25 GB (SAN) :
: 0.0 : Reboot / Remote Console :
: 0.0 : 100 Mbps Public & Private Network Uplinks :
: 0.0 : 0 GB Bandwidth Allotment :
: 0.0 : 1 IP Address :
: 0.0 : Host Ping and TCP Service Monitoring :
: 0.0 : Email and Ticket :
: 0.0 : Automated Reboot from Monitoring :
: 0.0 : Unlimited SSL VPN Users & 1 PPTP VPN User per account :
: 0.0 : 2 GB :
: 0.0 : 1 x 2.0 GHz or higher Core :
: 0.000 : Total hourly cost :
:.....:

```

After the last command, the virtual server is now being built. It should instantly appear in your virtual server list now.

```

$ slcli vs list
:.....:
↪.....:
: id : datacenter : host : cores : memory : primary_ip : ↪
↪backend_ip : active_transaction :
:.....:
↪:.....:
: 1234567 : ams01 : example.softlayer.com : 2 : 1G : 108.168.200.11 : 10.54.
↪80.200 : Assign Host :
:.....:
↪:.....:

```

Cool. You may ask, “It’s creating... but how do I know when it’s done?” Well, here’s how:

```
$ slcli vs ready 'example' --wait=600
READY
```

When the previous command returns, you’ll know that the virtual server has finished the provisioning process and is ready to use. This is *very* useful for chaining commands together.

Now that you have your virtual server, let’s get access to it. To do that, use the *slcli vs detail* command. From the example below, you can see that the username is ‘root’ and password is ‘ABCDEFGH’.

Warning: Be careful when using the *--passwords* flag. This will print the virtual server’s password on the screen. Make sure no one is looking over your shoulder. It’s also advisable to change your root password soon after creating your virtual server, or to create a user with sudo access and disable SSH-based login directly to the root account.

```
$ slcli vs detail example --passwords
:.....:
:      Name : Value      :
:.....:
:      id   : 1234567     :
:  hostname : example.softlayer.com :
:    status : Active       :
:    state  : Running     :
: datacenter : ams01       :
:    cores  : 2           :
:   memory  : 1G          :
: public_ip : 108.168.200.11   :
: private_ip : 10.54.80.200    :
:    os     : Debian      :
: private_only : False      :
: private_cpu : False      :
:   created  : 2013-06-13T08:29:44-06:00 :
:   modified : 2013-06-13T08:31:57-06:00 :
:    users   : root ABCDEFGH :
:.....:
```

6.35.1 virtual bandwidth

Bandwidth data over date range. Bandwidth is listed in GB

Using just a date might get you times off by 1 hour, use T00:01 to get just the specific days data Timezones can also be included with the YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss.000000-HH:mm format.

Due to some rounding and date alignment details, results here might be slightly different than results in the control portal.

Example:

```
slcli hw bandwidth 1234 -s 2019-05-01T00:01 -e 2019-05-02T00:00:01.000000-12:00
```

```
virtual bandwidth [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- s, --start_date <start_date>**
Required Start Date YYYY-MM-DD, YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss,
- e, --end_date <end_date>**
Required End Date YYYY-MM-DD, YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss
- p, --summary_period <summary_period>**
300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds
Default 3600
- q, --quite_summary**
Only show the summary table
Default False

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

If no timezone is specified, IMS local time (CST) will be assumed, which might not match your user's selected timezone.

6.35.2 virtual cancel

Cancel virtual servers.

`virtual cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER`

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.3 virtual capture

Capture one or all disks from a virtual server to a SoftLayer image.

`virtual capture [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER`

Options

- n, --name <name>**
Required Name of the image
- all <all>**
Capture all disks belonging to the VS
- note <note>**
Add a note to be associated with the image

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.4 virtual create

Order/create virtual servers.

```
virtual create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- H, --hostname <hostname>**
Required Host portion of the FQDN
- D, --domain <domain>**
Required Domain portion of the FQDN
- c, --cpu <cpu>**
 Number of CPU cores (not available with flavors)
- m, --memory <memory>**
 Memory in mebibytes (not available with flavors)
- f, --flavor <flavor>**
 Public Virtual Server flavor key name
- d, --datacenter <datacenter>**
Required Datacenter shortname
- o, --os <os>**
 OS install code. Tip: you can specify <OS>_LATEST
- image <image>**
 Image ID. See: 'slcli image list' for reference
- boot-mode <boot_mode>**
 Specify the mode to boot the OS in. Supported modes are HVM and PV.
- billing <billing>**
 Billing rate
 Default hourly
 Options hourly | monthly
- dedicated, --public**
 Create a Dedicated Virtual Server
- host-id <host_id>**
 Host Id to provision a Dedicated Host Virtual Server onto
- san**
 Use SAN storage instead of local disk.
- test**
 Do not actually create the virtual server

--export <export>
Exports options to a template file

-i, --postinstall <postinstall>
Post-install script to download

-k, --key <key>
SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)

--disk <disk>
Disk sizes (multiple occurrence permitted)

--private
Forces the VS to only have access the private network

--like <like>
Use the configuration from an existing VS

-n, --network <network>
Network port speed in Mbps

-g, --tag <tag>
Tags to add to the instance (multiple occurrence permitted)

-t, --template <template>
A template file that defaults the command-line options

-u, --userdata <userdata>
User defined metadata string

-F, --userfile <userfile>
Read userdata from file

--vlan-public <vlan_public>
The ID of the public VLAN on which you want the virtual server placed

--vlan-private <vlan_private>
The ID of the private VLAN on which you want the virtual server placed

--subnet-public <subnet_public>
The ID of the public SUBNET on which you want the virtual server placed

--subnet-private <subnet_private>
The ID of the private SUBNET on which you want the virtual server placed

--router-public <router_public>
The ID of the public ROUTER on which you want the virtual server placed

--router-private <router_private>
The ID of the private ROUTER on which you want the virtual server placed

-S, --public-security-group <public_security_group>
Security group ID to associate with the public interface (multiple occurrence permitted)

-s, --private-security-group <private_security_group>
Security group ID to associate with the private interface (multiple occurrence permitted)

--wait <wait>
Wait until VS is finished provisioning for up to X seconds before returning

--placementgroup <placementgroup>
Placement Group name or Id to order this guest on. See: slcli vs placementgroup list

--ipv6

Adds an IPv6 address to this guest

--transient

Create a transient virtual server

See 'slcli vs create-options' for valid options

6.35.5 virtual create-options

Virtual server order options.

```
virtual create-options [OPTIONS] [LOCATION]
```

Options

--vsi-type <vsi_type>

VS keyName type.

Default PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER

Options PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER | TRANSIENT_CLOUD_SERVER | SUS-
PEND_CLOUD_SERVER | CLOUD_SERVER

-p, --prices

Use -prices to list the server item prices, and to list the Item Prices by location, add it to the -prices option using location short name, e.g. -prices dal13

Arguments

LOCATION

Optional argument

6.35.6 virtual dns-sync

Sync DNS records.

```
virtual dns-sync [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-a, --a-record

Sync the A record for the host

--aaaa-record

Sync the AAAA record for the host

--ptr

Sync the PTR record for the host

--ttl <ttl>

Sets the TTL for the A and/or PTR records

Default 7200

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

If you don't specify any arguments, it will attempt to update both the A and PTR records. If you don't want to update both records, you may use the -a or -ptr arguments to limit the records updated.

6.35.7 virtual edit

Edit a virtual server's details.

```
virtual edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- D, --domain <domain>**
Domain portion of the FQDN
- H, --hostname <hostname>**
Host portion of the FQDN. example: server
- g, --tag <tag>**
Tags to set or empty string to remove all
- u, --userdata <userdata>**
User defined metadata string
- F, --userfile <userfile>**
Read userdata from file
- public-speed <public_speed>**
Public port speed.
Options 0 | 10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000
- private-speed <private_speed>**
Private port speed.
Options 0 | 10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.8 virtual list

List virtual servers.

```
virtual list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- c, --cpu <cpu>**
Number of CPU cores
- D, --domain <domain>**
Domain portion of the FQDN
- d, --datacenter <datacenter>**
Datacenter shortname
- H, --hostname <hostname>**
Host portion of the FQDN
- m, --memory <memory>**
Memory in mebibytes
- n, --network <network>**
Network port speed in Mbps
- hourly**
Show only hourly instances
- monthly**
Show only monthly instances
- transient <transient>**
Filter by transient instances
- hardware**
Show the all VSI related to hardware
- all-guests**
Show the all VSI and hardware VSIs
- tag <tag>**
Filter by tags (multiple occurrence permitted)
- sortby <sortby>**
Column to sort by
Default hostname
- columns <columns>**
Columns to display. [options: guid, primary_ip, backend_ip, datacenter, action, power_state, created_by, tags]
Default id,hostname,primary_ip,backend_ip,datacenter,action
- l, --limit <limit>**
How many results to get in one api call, default is 100
Default 100

6.35.9 virtual pause

Pauses an active virtual server.

```
virtual pause [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.10 virtual power-on

Power on a virtual server.

```
virtual power-on [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.11 virtual power-off

Power off an active virtual server.

```
virtual power-off [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--hard, --soft

Perform a hard shutdown

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.12 virtual resume

Resumes a paused virtual server.

```
virtual resume [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.13 virtual rescue

Reboot into a rescue image.

```
virtual rescue [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.14 virtual reboot

Reboot an active virtual server.

```
virtual reboot [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--hard, --soft

Perform a hard or soft reboot

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.15 virtual ready

Check if a virtual server is ready.

```
virtual ready [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--wait <wait>

Seconds to wait

Default 0

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.16 virtual upgrade

Upgrade a virtual server.

```
virtual upgrade [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--cpu <cpu>

Number of CPU cores

--private

CPU core will be on a dedicated host server.

--memory <memory>

Memory in megabytes

--network <network>

Network port speed in Mbps

--add-disk <add_disk>

add Hard disk in GB

--resize-disk <resize_disk>

Update disk number to size in GB. -resize-disk 250 2

--flavor <flavor>

Flavor keyName Do not use -memory, -cpu or -private, if you are using flavors

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

Note: SoftLayer automatically reboots the VS once upgrade request is placed. The VS is halted until the Upgrade transaction is completed. However for Network, no reboot is required.

6.35.17 virtual usage

Usage information of a virtual server.

```
virtual usage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```


Options

- s, --start_date <start_date>**
Required Start Date e.g. 2019-3-4 (yyyy-MM-dd)
- e, --end_date <end_date>**
Required End Date e.g. 2019-4-2 (yyyy-MM-dd)
- t, --valid_type <valid_type>**
Required Metric_Data_Type keyName e.g. CPU0, CPU1, MEMORY_USAGE, etc.
- p, --summary_period <summary_period>**
300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.35.18 virtual storage

Get storage details for a virtual server.

```
virtual storage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.35.19 virtual billing

Get billing for a virtual device.

```
virtual billing [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.35.20 virtual detail

Get details for a virtual server.

```
virtual detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--passwords

Show passwords (check over your shoulder!)

--price

Show associated prices

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.21 virtual reload

Reload operating system on a virtual server.

```
virtual reload [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-i, --postinstall <postinstall>

Post-install script to download

--image <image>

Image ID. The default is to use the current operating system. See: 'slcli image list' for reference

-k, --key <key>

SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.22 virtual credentials

List virtual server credentials.

```
virtual credentials [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.23 virtual migrate

Manage VSIs that require migration. Can migrate Dedicated Host VSIs as well.

```
virtual migrate [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-g, --guest <guest>

Guest ID to immediately migrate.

-a, --all

Migrate ALL guests that require migration immediately.

-h, --host <host>

Dedicated Host ID to migrate to. Only works on guests that are already on a dedicated host.

6.35.24 virtual authorize-storage

Authorize File, Block and Portable Storage to a Virtual Server.

```
virtual authorize-storage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-u, --username-storage <username_storage>

The storage username to be added to the virtual server

--portable-id <portable_id>

The portable storage id to be added to the virtual server

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

Manages the migration of virtual guests. Supports migrating virtual guests on Dedicated Hosts as well.

6.35.25 Reserved Capacity

Working with Reserved Capacity

There are two main concepts for Reserved Capacity. The [Reserved Capacity Group](#) and the [Reserved Capacity Instance](#). The Reserved Capacity Group, is a set block of capacity set aside for you at the time of the order. It will contain a set number of Instances which are all the same size. Instances can be ordered like normal VSIs, with the exception that you need to include the reservedCapacityGroupId, and it must be the same size as the group you are ordering the instance in.

- [About Reserved Capacity](#)
- [Reserved Capacity FAQ](#)

The SLCLI supports some basic Reserved Capacity Features.

vs capacity create

This command will create a Reserved Capacity Group.

Warning: These groups can not be canceled until their contract expires in 1 or 3 years!

```
$ slcli vs capacity create --name test-capacity -d dal13 -b 1411193 -c B1_1X2_1_YEAR_
↪TERM -q 10
```

vs cacpacity create_options

This command will print out the Flavors that can be used to create a Reserved Capacity Group, as well as the backend routers available, as those are needed when creating a new group.

vs capacity create_guest

This command will create a virtual server (Reserved Capacity Instance) inside of your Reserved Capacity Group. This command works very similar to the *slcli vs create* command.

```
$ slcli vs capacity create-guest --capacity-id 1234 --primary-disk 25 -H ABCD -D test.
↪com -o UBUNTU_LATEST_64 --ipv6 -k test-key --test
```

vs capacity detail

This command will print out some basic information about the specified Reserved Capacity Group.

vs capacity list

This command will list out all Reserved Capacity Groups. a # symbol represents a filled instance, and a - symbol represents an empty instance

```
$ slcli vs capacity list
:.....
↪.....:
:
:                               Reserved Capacity
↪
:                               :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
: ID :      Name      : Capacity :      Flavor      : Location :
↪ Created          :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
: 1234 :    test-capacity    : ####- ---- : B1.1x2 (1 Year Term) : bcr02a.dal13 : 2018-
↪ 09-24T16:33:09-06:00 :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
```

6.35.26 Placement Groups

Working with Placement Groups

A [Placement Group](#) is a way to control which physical servers your virtual servers get provisioned onto.

To create a [Virtual_PlacementGroup](#) object, you will need to know the following:

- backendRouterId, from [getAvailableRouters](#)
- ruleId, from [getAllObjects](#)
- name, can be any string, but must be unique on your account

Once a placement group is created, you can create new virtual servers in that group. Existing VSIs cannot be moved into a placement group. When ordering a VSI in a placement group, make sure to set the [placementGroupId](#) for each guest in your order.

use the `--placementgroup` option with `vs create` to specify creating a VSI in a specific group.

```
$ slcli vs create -H testGroup001 -D test.com -f B1_1X2X25 -d mex01 -o DEBIAN_LATEST --
↪placementgroup testGroup
```

Placement groups can only be deleted once all the virtual guests in the group have been reclaimed.

vs placementgroup create

This command will create a placement group.

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup create --name testGroup -b bcr02a.dal06 -r SPREAD
```

Options

- name TEXT** Name for this new placement group. [required]
- b, --backend_router TEXT** backendRouter, can be either the hostname or id. [required]
- r, --rule TEXT** The keyName or Id of the rule to govern this placement group. [required]

vs placementgroup create-options

This command will print out the available routers and rule sets for use in creating a placement group.

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup create-options
:.....:
:           Available Routers           :
:.....:
:  Datacenter :   Hostname   : Backend Router Id :
:.....:
: Washington 1 : bcr01.wdc01 :      16358         :
:   Tokyo 5    : bcr01a.tok05 :     1587015        :
:.....:
: Rules :
:.....:
: Id : KeyName :
:.....:
: 1  : SPREAD :
:.....:
```

vs placementgroup delete

This command will remove a placement group. The placement group needs to be empty for this command to succeed.

Options

- purge** Delete all guests in this placement group. The group itself can be deleted once all VMs are fully reclaimed

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup delete testGroup
```

You can use the flag `--purge` to auto-cancel all VSIs in a placement group. You will still need to wait for them to be reclaimed before proceeding to delete the group itself.

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup delete testGroup --purge
You are about to delete the following guests!
issues10691547768562.test.com, issues10691547768572.test.com, issues10691547768552.
test.com, issues10691548718280.test.com
This action will cancel all guests! Continue? [y/N]: y
Deleting issues10691547768562.test.com...
Deleting issues10691547768572.test.com...
Deleting issues10691547768552.test.com...
Deleting issues10691548718280.test.com...
```

vs placementgroup list

This command will list all placement groups on your account.

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup list
:.....:
↪...:
:                                     Placement Groups                                     ↪
↪  :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪...:
:  Id  :      Name      : Backend Router : Rule  : Guests :      Created      ↪
↪  :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪...:
: 31741 :      fotest      : bcr01a.tor01   : SPREAD : 1      : 2018-11-22T14:36:10-
↪06:00 :
: 64535 :      testGroup   : bcr01a.mex01   : SPREAD : 3      : 2019-01-17T14:36:42-
↪06:00 :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪...:
```

vs placementgroup detail

This command will provide some detailed information about a specific placement group

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup detail testGroup
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
:  Id  :      Name      : Backend Router : Rule  :      Created      :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
: 64535 : testGroup      : bcr01a.mex01   : SPREAD : 2019-01-17T14:36:42-06:00 :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:
:  Id  :      FQDN      : Primary IP  : Backend IP  : CPU : Memory :      ↪
↪ Provisioned      : Transaction :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:
: 69134895 : testGroup62.test.com : 169.57.70.166 : 10.131.11.32 : 1    : 1024    : 2019-
↪01-17T17:44:50-06:00 :      -      :
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
: 69134901 : testGroup72.test.com : 169.57.70.184 : 10.131.11.59 : 1 : 1024 : 2019-
↪01-17T17:44:53-06:00 : - :
: 69134887 : testGroup52.test.com : 169.57.70.187 : 10.131.11.25 : 1 : 1024 : 2019-
↪01-17T17:44:43-06:00 : - :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....
↪.....:.....:
```


CONTRIBUTING

7.1 Contribution Guide

This page explains how to get started contributing code to the SoftLayer API Python Bindings project.

7.1.1 Code Organization

- **docs** - Where The source to this documentation lives.
- **SoftLayer** - All the source lives under here.
 - **API** - Primary API client.
 - **CLI** - Code for the command-line interface.
 - **managers** - API Managers. Abstractions to help use the API.

7.1.2 Setting Up A Dev Environment

Before working with the SoftLayer Python API client source, we strongly recommend that you know how to use Python's virtual environment, [virtualenv](#). Virtualenv allows you to create isolated Python environments that are individually tailored to particular development projects. Each environment can have its own set of libraries and even its own Python interpreter. This keeps them fully isolated, reducing the possibility of library conflicts between different projects.

After you have virtualenv, you should set up a virtual environment and activate it whenever you are working on softlayer-python. The commands needed to setup an environment and activate it might look something like this:

```
virtualenv --no-site-packages softlayer_env
source softlayer_env/bin/activate
```

Please refer to the virtualenv documentation for more information about creating, and working with virtual environments.

Once you have an appropriate environment, you will then download the SoftLayer API Python Bindings source code by following the [installation instructions](#). Change into softlayer-python source directory and run the following to install the pre-requisites that you'll need in order to run the test suites:

```
pip install -r tools/test-requirements.txt
```

7.1.3 Testing

The project has a mix of functional and unit tests. Before submitting changes to be integrated into the project, you should validate your code using `tox`. Simply issue the `tox` command from the root of the source tree:

```
tox
```

In addition to testing different versions of Python, `tox` checks for common mistakes in the code using `Flake8` and `pylint`. You should eliminate the linting errors that are reported before submitting your code. You can run only the linting checks by using this command:

```
tox -eanalysis
```

The project's configuration instructs `tox` to test against many different versions of Python. A `tox` test will use as many of those as it can find on your local computer. Rather than installing all those versions, we recommend that you point the `Travis` continuous integration tool at your GitHub fork. Travis will run the test against the full suite of Python versions every time you push new code.

Using `tox` to run tests in multiple environments can be very time consuming. If you wish to quickly run the tests in your own environment, you may do so using `py.test`. The command to do that is:

```
py.test tests
```

Fixtures

Testing of this project relies quite heavily on fixtures to simulate API calls. When running the unit tests, we use the `FixtureTransport` class, which instead of making actual API calls, loads data from `/fixtures/SoftLayer_Service_Name.py` and tries to find a variable that matches the method you are calling.

When adding new Fixtures you should try to sanitize the data of any account identifying results, such as account ids, username, and that sort of thing. It is ok to leave the id in place for things like datacenter ids, price ids.

To Overwrite a fixture, you can use a mock object to do so. Like either of these two methods:

```
# From tests/CLI/modules/vs_capacity_tests.py
from SoftLayer.fixtures import SoftLayer_Product_Package

def test_create_test(self):
    item_mock = self.set_mock('SoftLayer_Product_Package', 'getItems')
    item_mock.return_value = SoftLayer_Product_Package.getItems_RESERVED_CAPACITY

def test_detail_pending(self):
    capacity_mock = self.set_mock('SoftLayer_Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup', 'getObject')
    get_object = {
        'name': 'test-capacity',
        'instances': []
    }
    capacity_mock.return_value = get_object
```

7.1.4 Documentation

The project is documented in [reStructuredText](#) and built using [Sphinx](#). If you have [fabric](#) installed, you simply need to run the following to build the docs:

```
fab make_html
```

The documentation will be built in `docs/_build/html`. If you don't have [fabric](#), use the following commands.

```
cd docs
make html
sphinx-build -b html ./ ./html
```

The primary docs are built at [Read the Docs](#).

7.1.5 Style

This project tries to follow [PEP 8](#) and most of the style suggestions that [pyflakes](#) recommends. Run [Flake8](#) regularly. Flake8, with project-specific exceptions, can be run by using [tox](#):

```
tox -e analysis
```

[Autopep8](#) can fix a lot of the simple [flake8](#) errors about whitespace and indentation.

```
autopep8 -r -a -v -i --max-line-length 119
```

7.1.6 Contributing

Contributing to the Python API bindings follows the [fork-pull-request model](#) on [GitHub](#). The project uses GitHub's [issue tracker](#) and [pull requests](#) to manage source control, bug fixes and new feature development regarding the API bindings and the CLI. In order to contribute, we require that you sign a contributor agreement:

- Sign our contributor agreement (CLA) You can find the CLA [here](#).
- If you're contributing on behalf of your employer we'll need a signed copy of our corporate contributor agreement (CCLA) as well. You can find the CCLA [here](#).

7.1.7 Developer Resources

7.2 Command-Line Interface Developer Guide

The SoftLayer CLI can be used to manage many different SoftLayer services directly from the command line.

The command line parsing is currently based on [click](#), which is a command parsing library along with some additions to dynamically load modules from a routes-like file and from [entry points](#).

7.2.1 First Example

For the first example, we can create `slcli table-example` by creating the following file at `SoftLayer/CLI/table_example.py`:

```
"""A formatting table example."""
from SoftLayer.CLI import environment
from SoftLayer.CLI import formatting

import click

@click.command()
@environment.pass_env
def cli(env):
    """This returns an table that highlights how tables are output"""
    # create a table with two columns: col1, col2
    table = formatting.Table(['col1', 'col2'])

    # align the data facing each other
    # valid values are r, c, l for right, center, left
    # note, these are suggestions based on the format chosen by the user
    table.align['col1'] = 'r'
    table.align['col2'] = 'l'

    # add rows
    table.add_row(['test', 'test'])
    table.add_row(['test2', 'test2'])

    env.fout(table)
```

Then we need to register it so that `slcli table-example` will know to route to this new module. We do that by adding `ALL_ROUTES` in `SoftLayer/CLI/routes.py` to include the following:

```
...
('table-example', 'SoftLayer.CLI.table_example:cli'),
...
```

Which gives us

```
$ slcli table-example
:.....:
:  col1 : col2 :
:.....:
:  test : test  :
: test2 : test2 :
:.....:

$ slcli --format=raw table-example
test  test
test2 test2
```

Formatting of the data represented in the table is actually controlled upstream from the `CLIRunnable`'s making supporting more data formats in the future easier.

7.2.2 Arguments

A command usually isn't very useful without context or arguments of some kind. With click, you have a large array of argument and option types at your disposal. Additionally, with the SoftLayer CLI, we have global options and context which is stored in *SoftLayer.CLI.environment.Environment* and is attainable through a decorator located at *SoftLayer.CLI.environment.pass_env*. An example of options and the environment is shown below. It also shows how output should be done using *env.out* instead of printing. This is used for testing and to have a consistent way to print things onto the screen.

```
from SoftLayer.CLI import environment

import click

@click.command()
@click.option("--number",
              required=True,
              type=click.INT,
              help="print different output")
@click.option("--choice",
              type=click.Choice(['this', 'that']),
              help="print different output")
@click.option("--test", help="print different output")
@environment.pass_env
def cli(env, number, choice, test):
    """Argument parsing example"""

    if test:
        env.out("Just testing, move along...")
    else:
        env.out("This is fo'realz!")

    if choice == 'this':
        env.out("Selected this")
    elif choice == 'that':
        env.out("Selected that")

    env.out("This is a number: %d" % number)
```

Refer to the click library documentation for more options.

7.2.3 Accessing the API

A SoftLayer client is stood up for every command and is available through *SoftLayer.CLI.environment.Environment.client*. The example below shows how to make a simple API call to the *SoftLayer_Account::getObject*.

```
from SoftLayer.CLI import environment

import click

@click.command()
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
@environment.pass_env
def cli(env):
    """Using the SoftLayer API client"""

    account = env.client['Account'].getObject()
    return account['companyName']
```

7.2.4 Aborting execution

When a confirmation fails, you probably want to stop execution and give a non-zero exit code. To do that, raise a *SoftLayer.CLI.exceptions.CLIAbort* exception with the message for the user as the first parameter. This will prevent any further execution and properly return the right error code.

```
raise CLIAbort("Aborting. Failed confirmation")
```

7.2.5 Documenting Commands

All commands should be documented, luckily there is a sphinx module that makes this pretty easy.

If you were adding a summary command to *slcli account* you would find the documentation in *docs/cli/account.rst* and you would just need to add this for your command

```
.. click:: SoftLayer.CLI.account.summary:cli
   :prog: account summary
   :show-nested:
```

The following REGEX can take the route entry and turn it into a document entry.

```
s/^\(['([a-z]*):([a-z-]*)', '([a-zA-Z\.:_]*')\'),$/.. click:: $3\n    :prog: $1 $2\n    ↪:show-nested:\n/
```

Find:

```
^\(['([a-z]*):([a-z-]*)', '([a-zA-Z\.:_]*')\'),$
```

REPLACE:

```
.. click:: $3
   :prog: $1 $2
   :show-nested:
```

I tried to get sphinx-click to auto document the ENTIRE slcli, but the results were all on one page, and required a few changes to sphinx-click itself to work. This is due to the fact that most commands in SLCLI use the function name “cli”, and some hacks would have to be put in place to use the path name instead.

7.2.6 Architecture

SLCLI is the base command, and it starts at *SoftLayerCLCore.py*. Commands are loaded from the *SoftLayerCLIroutes.py* file. How Click figures this out is defined by the *CommandLoader* class in *core.py*, which is an example of a [MultiCommand](#).

There are a few examples of commands that are three levels deep, that use a bit more graceful command loader.

- *SoftLayerCLIvirtcapacity__init__.py*
- *SoftLayerCLIvirtplacementgroup__init__.py*
- *SoftLayerCLIobject_storagecredential__init__.py*

These commands are not directly listed in the routes file, because the autoloader doesn't have the ability to parse multiple commands like that. For now it was easier to make the rare third level commands have their own special loader than re-write the base command loader to be able to look deeper into the project for commands.

EXTERNAL LINKS

- [SoftLayer API Documentation](#)
- [Source on GitHub](#)
- [Issues](#)
- [Pull Requests](#)
- [PyPI](#)

PYTHON MODULE INDEX

S

- `SoftLayer`, [82](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.account`, [8](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.autoscale`, [10](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.block`, [11](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.cdn`, [18](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host`, [21](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.dns`, [23](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.email`, [26](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.event_log`, [27](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.file`, [28](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.firewall`, [34](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.hardware`, [36](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.image`, [42](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.ipsec`, [44](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer`, [47](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.metadata`, [50](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.network`, [51](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.ordering`, [57](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.sshkey`, [62](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.ssl`, [63](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.ticket`, [65](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.vs`, [67](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity`, [76](#)
- `SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement`, [78](#)

Symbols

- D
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, 122
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, 122
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, 124
 - event-log-get command line option, 130
 - hardware-create command line option, 150
 - hardware-edit command line option, 152
 - hardware-list command line option, 153
 - virtual-create command line option, 223
 - virtual-edit command line option, 226
 - virtual-list command line option, 227
- F
 - autoscale-edit command line option, 98
 - hardware-edit command line option, 152
 - order-quote command line option, 188
 - virtual-create command line option, 224
 - virtual-edit command line option, 226
- H
 - cdn-edit command line option, 117
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 115
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, 122
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, 122
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, 124
 - hardware-create command line option, 150
 - hardware-edit command line option, 152
 - hardware-list command line option, 153
 - virtual-create command line option, 223
 - virtual-edit command line option, 226
 - virtual-list command line option, 227
- M
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 194
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 195
- P
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 115
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, 177
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
- S
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, 177
 - virtual-create command line option, 224
- a-record
 - hardware-dns-sync command line option, 157
 - virtual-dns-sync command line option, 225
- aaaa-record
 - hardware-dns-sync command line option, 157
 - virtual-dns-sync command line option, 225
- ack
 - account-event-detail command line option, 93
- ack-all
 - account-events command line option, 93
- add
 - image-datacenter command line option, 162
 - user-vpn-subnet command line option, 215
- add-disk <add_disk>
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, 159
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, 230
- all
 - account-invoices command line option, 94
 - virtual-migrate command line option, 233
- all <all>
 - virtual-capture command line option, 222
- all-guests
 - virtual-list command line option, 227
- amount <amount>
 - autoscale-scale command line option, 97
- auth <auth>
 - config-setup command line option, 121
 - setup command line option, 121
- backPort <backport>

loadbal-pool-add command line option, [175](#)
loadbal-pool-edit command line option,
[176](#)
--backProtocol <backprotocol>
loadbal-pool-add command line option, [175](#)
loadbal-pool-edit command line option,
[176](#)
--backend <backend>
loadbal-order command line option, [178](#)
--billing <billing>
block-volume-duplicate command line
option, [108](#)
block-volume-order command line option,
[110](#)
dedicatedhost-create command line
option, [122](#)
file-volume-duplicate command line
option, [140](#)
file-volume-order command line option,
[142](#)
hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
order-place command line option, [186](#)
virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
vlan-create command line option, [216](#)
--body <body>
ticket-create command line option, [207](#)
ticket-update command line option, [209](#)
--boot-mode <boot_mode>
virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
--bucket-name <bucket_name>
cdn-origin-add command line option, [115](#)
--by
autoscale-scale command line option, [97](#)
--by-id <by_id>
dns-record-edit command line option, [127](#)
--by-record <by_record>
dns-record-edit command line option, [127](#)
--byol
image-import command line option, [161](#)
--cache <cache>
cdn-edit command line option, [117](#)
--cache-query <cache_query>
cdn-origin-add command line option, [116](#)
--capacity <capacity>
block-snapshot-order command line
option, [106](#)
file-snapshot-order command line option,
[137](#)
--category <category>
order-item-list command line option, [185](#)
--clientTimeout <clienttimeout>
loadbal-pool-edit command line option,
[176](#)
--closed
account-invoices command line option, [94](#)
ticket-list command line option, [208](#)
--cloud-init
image-import command line option, [161](#)
--columns <columns>
block-access-list command line option, [99](#)
block-replica-locations command line
option, [102](#)
block-replica-partners command line
option, [102](#)
block-snapshot-list command line option,
[105](#)
block-volume-list command line option,
[109](#)
dedicatedhost-list command line option,
[122](#)
dedicatedhost-list-guests command line
option, [124](#)
file-access-list command line option, [132](#)
file-replica-locations command line
option, [134](#)
file-replica-partners command line
option, [134](#)
file-snapshot-list command line option,
[137](#)
file-volume-list command line option, [140](#)
hardware-list command line option, [153](#)
user-list command line option, [211](#)
virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
--comment <comment>
hardware-cancel command line option, [149](#)
--complex-type <complex_type>
order-place command line option, [186](#)
order-place-quote command line option,
[190](#)
order-quote command line option, [188](#)
--components
hardware-detail command line option, [151](#)
--connections <connections>
loadbal-pool-add command line option, [175](#)
loadbal-pool-edit command line option,
[176](#)
--count <count>
ticket-detail command line option, [208](#)
--cpu <cpu>
autoscale-edit command line option, [98](#)
dedicatedhost-list command line option,
[122](#)
dedicatedhost-list-guests command line
option, [124](#)
hardware-list command line option, [153](#)
virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
virtual-upgrade command line option, [230](#)

```

--credential_id <credential_id>
    object-storage-credential-delete
        command line option, 181
--crt <crt>
    ssl-add command line option, 200
    ssl-edit command line option, 200
--csr <csr>
    ssl-add command line option, 200
    ssl-edit command line option, 200
--data <data>
    dns-record-edit command line option, 127
    dns-record-list command line option, 127
--datacenter <datacenter>
    block-volume-count command line option,
        107
    block-volume-list command line option,
        109
    dedicatedhost-create command line
        option, 122
    dedicatedhost-create-options command
        line option, 123
    dedicatedhost-list command line option,
        122
    file-volume-count command line option,
        139
    file-volume-list command line option, 140
    hardware-create command line option, 150
    hardware-list command line option, 153
    licenses-create command line option, 172
    loadbal-order command line option, 178
    loadbal-order-options command line
        option, 179
    subnet-list command line option, 204
    virtual-create command line option, 223
    virtual-list command line option, 227
    vlan-create command line option, 215
    vlan-list command line option, 217
--date-max <date_max>
    event-log-get command line option, 130
--date-min <date_min>
    autoscale-logs command line option, 97
    event-log-get command line option, 130
--day-of-week <day_of_week>
    block-snapshot-enable command line
        option, 104
    file-snapshot-enable command line
        option, 136
--dedicated
    virtual-create command line option, 223
--degraded
    hardware-edit command line option, 152
--dependent-duplicate <dependent_duplicate>
    block-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 108
    file-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 140
--description <description>
    securitygroup-create command line
        option, 193
    securitygroup-edit command line option,
        193
--detail
    tags-list command line option, 205
--details
    account-invoice-detail command line
        option, 94
    order-lookup command line option, 191
--direction <direction>
    securitygroup-rule-add command line
        option, 194
    securitygroup-rule-edit command line
        option, 195
--disable
    hardware-toggle-ipmi command line
        option, 156
    user-edit-notifications command line
        option, 212
    user-edit-permissions command line
        option, 213
    user-vpn-manual command line option, 215
--disk <disk>
    dedicatedhost-list command line option,
        122
    virtual-create command line option, 224
--domain <domain>
    dedicatedhost-create command line
        option, 122
    dedicatedhost-list-guests command line
        option, 124
    hardware-create command line option, 150
    hardware-edit command line option, 152
    hardware-list command line option, 153
    virtual-create command line option, 223
    virtual-edit command line option, 226
    virtual-list command line option, 227
--down
    autoscale-scale command line option, 97
--drive-controller <drive_controller>
    hardware-upgrade command line option, 159
--dry-run
    dns-import command line option, 125
    tags-cleanup command line option, 206
--duplicate-iops <duplicate_iops>
    block-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 108
    file-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 139
--duplicate-size <duplicate_size>

```

```
    block-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 108
    file-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 139
--duplicate-snapshot-size
    <duplicate_snapshot_size>
    block-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 108
    file-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 140
--duplicate-tier <duplicate_tier>
    block-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 108
    file-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 139
--email <email>
    email-edit command line option, 129
    user-create command line option, 214
--enable
    hardware-toggle-ipmi command line
        option, 156
    user-edit-notifications command line
        option, 212
    user-edit-permissions command line
        option, 213
    user-vpn-manual command line option, 215
--end <end>
    report-bandwidth command line option, 191
--end_date <end_date>
    hardware-bandwidth command line option,
        148
    virtual-bandwidth command line option,
        222
    virtual-usage command line option, 231
--ethertype <ethertype>
    securitygroup-rule-add command line
        option, 194
    securitygroup-rule-edit command line
        option, 195
--events
    user-detail command line option, 211
--export <export>
    dedicatedhost-create command line
        option, 123
    hardware-create command line option, 150
    virtual-create command line option, 223
--extensions <extensions>
    cdn-origin-add command line option, 116
--extra <extra>
    hardware-create command line option, 150
--extras <extras>
    order-place command line option, 186
    order-place-quote command line option,
        190
    --filter <_filters>
        call-api command line option, 119
--firewall-type <firewall_type>
    firewall-add command line option, 145
--flavor <flavor>
    dedicatedhost-create command line
        option, 122
    dedicatedhost-create-options command
        line option, 123
    virtual-create command line option, 223
    virtual-upgrade command line option, 230
--fqdn <fqdn>
    order-quote command line option, 188
--friendly-name <friendly_name>
    ipsec-update command line option, 165
--from-user <from_user>
    user-create command line option, 214
    user-edit-permissions command line
        option, 213
--frontPort <frontport>
    loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
    loadbal-pool-edit command line option,
        176
--frontProtocol <frontprotocol>
    loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
    loadbal-pool-edit command line option,
        176
--frontend <frontend>
    loadbal-order command line option, 178
--guest <guest>
    virtual-migrate command line option, 233
--guests
    dedicatedhost-detail command line
        option, 123
--hard
    hardware-reboot command line option, 155
    virtual-power-off command line option,
        228
    virtual-reboot command line option, 229
--hardware
    user-detail command line option, 211
    virtual-list command line option, 227
--hardware <hardware_identifier>
    ticket-attach command line option, 210
    ticket-create command line option, 207
    ticket-detach command line option, 210
--hardware-id <hardware_id>
    block-access-authorize command line
        option, 99
    block-access-revoke command line option,
        100
    file-access-authorize command line
        option, 131
```


file-access-revoke command line option, [132](#)
 --header <header>
 cdn-edit command line option, [117](#)
 cdn-origin-add command line option, [115](#)
 --healthInterval <healthinterval>
 loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [177](#)
 --healthPath <healthpath>
 loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [177](#)
 --healthRetry <healthretry>
 loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [177](#)
 --healthTimeout <healthtimeout>
 loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [177](#)
 --high-availability
 firewall-add command line option, [145](#)
 --history <history>
 cdn-detail command line option, [115](#)
 --host <host>
 virtual-migrate command line option, [233](#)
 --host-id <host_id>
 virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
 --hostname <hostname>
 dedicatedhost-create command line option, [122](#)
 dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [124](#)
 hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
 hardware-edit command line option, [152](#)
 hardware-list command line option, [153](#)
 virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
 virtual-edit command line option, [226](#)
 virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
 --hour <hour>
 block-snapshot-enable command line option, [104](#)
 file-snapshot-enable command line option, [136](#)
 --hourly
 virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
 --http-port <http_port>
 cdn-edit command line option, [117](#)
 --ibm-api-key <ibm_api_key>
 image-export command line option, [162](#)
 image-import command line option, [161](#)
 --icc <icc>
 ssl-add command line option, [200](#)
 ssl-edit command line option, [200](#)
 --id <_id>
 call-api command line option, [119](#)
 --identifier <identifier>
 subnet-list command line option, [204](#)
 --image <image>
 order-quote command line option, [188](#)
 virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
 virtual-reload command line option, [232](#)
 --immediate
 block-snapshot-cancel command line option, [103](#)
 block-volume-cancel command line option, [107](#)
 file-snapshot-cancel command line option, [135](#)
 file-volume-cancel command line option, [138](#)
 hardware-cancel command line option, [149](#)
 licenses-cancel command line option, [172](#)
 --in-file <in_file>
 sshkey-add command line option, [198](#)
 --include <include>
 ipsec-detail command line option, [164](#)
 --interface <interface>
 securitygroup-interface-add command line option, [196](#)
 securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, [197](#)
 --interval <interval>
 loadbal-health command line option, [173](#)
 --iops <iops>
 block-volume-order command line option, [110](#)
 file-volume-order command line option, [141](#)
 --ip-address <ip_address>
 block-access-authorize command line option, [99](#)
 block-access-revoke command line option, [100](#)
 file-access-authorize command line option, [131](#)
 file-access-revoke command line option, [132](#)
 --ip-address-id <ip_address_id>
 block-access-authorize command line option, [99](#)
 block-access-revoke command line option, [100](#)
 file-access-authorize command line option, [131](#)
 file-access-revoke command line option, [132](#)
 --ip-version <ip_version>
 globalip-list command line option, [147](#)
 --ipv4
 subnet-list command line option, [204](#)

- ipv6
 - globalip-create command line option, [147](#)
 - subnet-create command line option, [202](#)
 - subnet-list command line option, [204](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
- is-encrypted
 - image-import command line option, [161](#)
- json-filter <json_filter>
 - call-api command line option, [119](#)
- key <key>
 - hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
 - hardware-reload command line option, [155](#)
 - licenses-create command line option, [172](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [188](#)
 - sshkey-add command line option, [198](#)
 - ssl-add command line option, [200](#)
 - ssl-edit command line option, [200](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-reload command line option, [232](#)
- key-name <key_name>
 - tags-set command line option, [205](#)
- keys
 - user-detail command line option, [211](#)
- keyword <keyword>
 - order-item-list command line option, [185](#)
 - order-package-list command line option, [183](#)
 - order-preset-list command line option, [185](#)
- label <label>
 - loadbal-order command line option, [178](#)
 - sshkey-edit command line option, [198](#)
- like <like>
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
- limit <limit>
 - account-invoices command line option, [94](#)
 - account-orders command line option, [95](#)
 - call-api command line option, [119](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [153](#)
 - object-storage-accounts command line option, [180](#)
 - securitygroup-list command line option, [192](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
 - vlan-list command line option, [217](#)
- location <location>
 - block-replica-order command line option, [101](#)
 - block-volume-order command line option, [110](#)
 - file-replica-order command line option, [133](#)
 - file-volume-order command line option, [142](#)
- logins
 - user-detail command line option, [211](#)
- lvm
 - hardware-reload command line option, [155](#)
- mask <mask>
 - call-api command line option, [119](#)
- max <maximum>
 - autoscale-edit command line option, [98](#)
- member <member>
 - loadbal-member-add command line option, [174](#)
 - loadbal-member-del command line option, [174](#)
- memory <memory>
 - autoscale-edit command line option, [98](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, [122](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [124](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [153](#)
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, [159](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, [230](#)
- metadata
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
- method <method>
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [177](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [178](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [175](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [176](#)
- min <minimum>
 - autoscale-edit command line option, [98](#)
- minute <minute>
 - block-snapshot-enable command line option, [104](#)
 - file-snapshot-enable command line option, [136](#)
- monthly
 - virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
- name
 - tags-delete command line option, [206](#)
 - tags-details command line option, [206](#)
- name <name>
 - autoscale-edit command line option, [98](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, [122](#)
 - image-edit command line option, [160](#)
 - image-list command line option, [160](#)

- loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [177](#)
- loadbal-order command line option, [178](#)
- order-place-quote command line option, [190](#)
- securitygroup-create command line option, [193](#)
- securitygroup-edit command line option, [193](#)
- ticket-upload command line option, [209](#)
- virtual-capture command line option, [222](#)
- vlan-create command line option, [215](#)
- vlan-edit command line option, [216](#)
- vlan-list command line option, [217](#)
- network <network_identifier>
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [168](#)
- network <network>
 - hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [153](#)
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, [159](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, [230](#)
 - vlan-create command line option, [215](#)
- network-component <network_component>
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, [196](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, [197](#)
- network-identifier
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [168](#)
- network-space <network_space>
 - subnet-list command line option, [204](#)
- new-iops <new_iops>
 - block-volume-modify command line option, [109](#)
 - file-volume-modify command line option, [141](#)
- new-size <new_size>
 - block-volume-modify command line option, [109](#)
 - file-volume-modify command line option, [141](#)
- new-tier <new_tier>
 - block-volume-modify command line option, [109](#)
 - file-volume-modify command line option, [141](#)
- no-hardware
 - subnet-detail command line option, [203](#)
 - vlan-detail command line option, [216](#)
- no-metadata
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
- no-output-python
 - call-api command line option, [119](#)
- no-public
 - hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
- no-vs
 - subnet-detail command line option, [203](#)
 - vlan-detail command line option, [216](#)
- note <note>
 - block-volume-set-note command line option, [114](#)
 - file-volume-set-note command line option, [144](#)
 - image-edit command line option, [160](#)
 - image-import command line option, [161](#)
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, [170](#)
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, [171](#)
 - sshkey-add command line option, [198](#)
 - sshkey-edit command line option, [198](#)
 - subnet-edit command line option, [203](#)
 - subnet-edit-ip command line option, [204](#)
 - virtual-capture command line option, [222](#)
 - vlan-edit command line option, [216](#)
- notes <notes>
 - block-snapshot-create command line option, [103](#)
 - file-snapshot-create command line option, [135](#)
 - ssl-add command line option, [200](#)
 - ssl-edit command line option, [200](#)
- number <number>
 - vlan-list command line option, [217](#)
- obj-event <obj_event>
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
- obj-id <obj_id>
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
- obj-type <obj_type>
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
- offset <offset>
 - call-api command line option, [119](#)
- open
 - ticket-list command line option, [208](#)
- optimize-for <optimize_for>
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [116](#)
- order <order>
 - block-volume-list command line option, [109](#)
 - file-volume-list command line option, [140](#)
- orderBy <orderby>
 - call-api command line option, [119](#)
- origin <origin>
 - cdn-edit command line option, [117](#)
- origin-snapshot-id <origin_snapshot_id>

```
    block-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 108
    file-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 139
--origin-type <origin_type>
    cdn-origin-add command line option, 115
--os <os>
    hardware-create command line option, 150
    virtual-create command line option, 223
--os-code <os_code>
    image-import command line option, 161
--os-type <os_type>
    block-replica-order command line option,
        102
    block-volume-order command line option,
        110
--out-file <out_file>
    sshkey-print command line option, 199
--output-python
    call-api command line option, 119
--p1-auth <phase1_auth>
    ipsec-update command line option, 165
--p1-crypto <phase1_crypto>
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--p1-dh <phase1_dh>
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--p1-key-ttl <phase1_key_ttl>
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--p2-auth <phase2_auth>
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--p2-crypto <phase2_crypto>
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--p2-dh <phase2_dh>
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--p2-forward-secrecy
    <phase2_forward_secrecy>
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--p2-key-ttl <phase2_key_ttl>
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--package_type <package_type>
    order-package-list command line option,
        183
--password <password>
    block-access-password command line
        option, 100
    email-edit command line option, 129
    user-create command line option, 214
--passwords
    hardware-detail command line option, 151
    virtual-detail command line option, 232
--path <path>
    ticket-upload command line option, 209
--performance-configuration
    <performance_configuration>
    cdn-edit command line option, 118
--permission <permission>
    user-edit-permissions command line
        option, 213
--permissions
    user-detail command line option, 211
--phase1-auth
    ipsec-update command line option, 165
--phase1-crypto
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--phase1-dh
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--phase1-key-ttl
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--phase2-auth
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--phase2-crypto
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--phase2-dh
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--phase2-forward-secrecy
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--phase2-key-ttl
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
--placementgroup <placementgroup>
    virtual-create command line option, 224
--pod <pod>
    vlan-create command line option, 215
--port <port>
    cdn-origin-add command line option, 115
    dns-record-add command line option, 126
--port-max <port_max>
    securitygroup-rule-add command line
        option, 194
    securitygroup-rule-edit command line
        option, 195
--port-min <port_min>
    securitygroup-rule-add command line
        option, 195
    securitygroup-rule-edit command line
        option, 195
--port-speed <port_speed>
    hardware-create command line option, 150
--portable-id <portable_id>
    virtual-authorize-storage command line
        option, 233
--postinstall <postinstall>
    hardware-create command line option, 150
    hardware-reload command line option, 155
    order-quote command line option, 188
    virtual-create command line option, 224
    virtual-reload command line option, 232
--preset <preset>
    order-place command line option, 186
```

order-place-quote command line option, [190](#)
 --preshared-key <preshared_key>
 ipsec-update command line option, [165](#)
 --price
 dedicatedhost-detail command line option, [123](#)
 hardware-detail command line option, [151](#)
 virtual-detail command line option, [232](#)
 --prices
 hardware-create-options command line option, [149](#)
 order-item-list command line option, [185](#)
 virtual-create-options command line option, [225](#)
 --priority <priority>
 dns-record-add command line option, [126](#)
 ticket-create command line option, [207](#)
 --private
 image-list command line option, [160](#)
 loadbal-member-add command line option, [174](#)
 virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 virtual-upgrade command line option, [230](#)
 --private-security-group
 <private_security_group>
 virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 --private-speed <private_speed>
 hardware-edit command line option, [152](#)
 virtual-edit command line option, [226](#)
 --protocol <protocol>
 cdn-origin-add command line option, [115](#)
 dns-record-add command line option, [126](#)
 loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [177](#)
 securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [195](#)
 securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [195](#)
 --ptr
 hardware-dns-sync command line option, [157](#)
 virtual-dns-sync command line option, [225](#)
 --public
 image-list command line option, [160](#)
 loadbal-member-add command line option, [174](#)
 loadbal-order command line option, [178](#)
 virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
 --public-bandwidth <public_bandwidth>
 hardware-upgrade command line option, [159](#)
 --public-security-group
 <public_security_group>
 virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 --public-speed <public_speed>
 hardware-edit command line option, [152](#)
 virtual-edit command line option, [226](#)
 --quantity <quantity>
 order-place command line option, [186](#)
 order-quote command line option, [188](#)
 --quite_summary
 hardware-bandwidth command line option, [148](#)
 virtual-bandwidth command line option, [222](#)
 --reason <reason>
 block-snapshot-cancel command line option, [103](#)
 block-volume-cancel command line option, [107](#)
 file-snapshot-cancel command line option, [135](#)
 file-volume-cancel command line option, [138](#)
 hardware-cancel command line option, [149](#)
 --record <record>
 dns-record-list command line option, [127](#)
 --redundant
 hardware-edit command line option, [152](#)
 --remote-group <remote_group>
 securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [194](#)
 securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [195](#)
 --remote-ip <remote_ip>
 ipsec-translation-add command line option, [170](#)
 ipsec-translation-update command line option, [171](#)
 securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [194](#)
 securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [195](#)
 --remote-peer <remote_peer>
 ipsec-update command line option, [165](#)
 --remove
 image-datacenter command line option, [162](#)
 user-vpn-subnet command line option, [215](#)
 --replicant-id <replicant_id>
 block-disaster-recovery-failover command line option, [114](#)
 block-replica-failover command line option, [101](#)
 file-disaster-recovery-failover command line option, [144](#)
 file-replica-failover command line option, [133](#)
 --required

- order-category-list command line option,
184
- resize-disk <resize_disk>
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, 159
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, 230
- resource-id <resource_id>
 - tags-set command line option, 205
- respect-headers <respect_headers>
 - cdn-edit command line option, 117
- retention-count <retention_count>
 - block-snapshot-enable command line
option, 104
 - file-snapshot-enable command line
option, 136
- retry <retry>
 - loadbal-health command line option, 173
- root-key-crn <root_key_crn>
 - image-import command line option, 161
- router <router>
 - dedicatedhost-create command line
option, 122
- router-private <router_private>
 - hardware-create command line option, 150
 - virtual-create command line option, 224
- router-public <router_public>
 - hardware-create command line option, 150
 - virtual-create command line option, 224
- san
 - virtual-create command line option, 223
- schedule-type <schedule_type>
 - block-snapshot-disable command line
option, 104
 - block-snapshot-enable command line
option, 104
 - file-snapshot-disable command line
option, 136
 - file-snapshot-enable command line
option, 136
- send-email
 - order-place-quote command line option,
190
- server
 - report-bandwidth command line option, 192
- server <server>
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option,
177
 - securitygroup-interface-add command
line option, 196
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command
line option, 197
- service <service>
 - dns-record-add command line option, 126
- service-offering <service_offering>
 - block-volume-order command line option,
110
 - file-volume-order command line option,
142
- size <size>
 - block-volume-order command line option,
110
 - file-volume-order command line option,
141
 - hardware-create command line option, 150
- snapshot-id <snapshot_id>
 - block-snapshot-restore command line
option, 106
 - file-snapshot-restore command line
option, 138
- snapshot-schedule <snapshot_schedule>
 - block-replica-order command line option,
101
 - file-replica-order command line option,
133
- snapshot-size <snapshot_size>
 - block-volume-order command line option,
110
 - file-volume-order command line option,
142
- soft
 - hardware-reboot command line option, 155
 - virtual-power-off command line option,
228
 - virtual-reboot command line option, 229
- sortby <sortby>
 - block-access-list command line option, 99
 - block-replica-locations command line
option, 102
 - block-replica-partners command line
option, 102
 - block-snapshot-list command line option,
105
 - block-volume-count command line option,
107
 - block-volume-limits command line option,
111
 - block-volume-list command line option,
109
 - cdn-list command line option, 115
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option,
122
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line
option, 124
 - file-access-list command line option, 132
 - file-replica-locations command line
option, 134
 - file-replica-partners command line
option, 134

file-snapshot-list command line option, 137
 file-volume-count command line option, 139
 file-volume-limits command line option, 142
 file-volume-list command line option, 140
 hardware-list command line option, 153
 report-bandwidth command line option, 191
 securitygroup-interface-list command line option, 196
 securitygroup-list command line option, 192
 securitygroup-rule-list command line option, 194
 sshkey-list command line option, 199
 ssl-list command line option, 201
 subnet-list command line option, 204
 summary command line option, 191
 virtual-list command line option, 227
 vlan-list command line option, 217
 --sslCert <sslcert>
 loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
 loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
 --start <start>
 report-bandwidth command line option, 191
 --start_date <start_date>
 hardware-bandwidth command line option, 148
 virtual-bandwidth command line option, 222
 virtual-usage command line option, 231
 --static-ip <static_ip>
 ipsec-translation-add command line option, 170
 ipsec-translation-update command line option, 171
 --status <status>
 ssl-list command line option, 201
 --sticky
 loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, 177
 loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
 loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
 --storage-type <storage_type>
 block-volume-list command line option, 109
 block-volume-order command line option, 110
 file-volume-list command line option, 140
 file-volume-order command line option, 141
 --subject-id <subject_id>
 ticket-create command line option, 207
 --subnet <subnet>
 loadbal-order command line option, 178
 --subnet-id <subnet_id>
 block-subnets-assign command line option, 112
 block-subnets-remove command line option, 113
 file-access-authorize command line option, 131
 file-access-revoke command line option, 132
 ipsec-subnet-add command line option, 168
 ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, 169
 --subnet-private <subnet_private>
 virtual-create command line option, 224
 --subnet-public <subnet_public>
 virtual-create command line option, 224
 --subnet-type
 ipsec-subnet-add command line option, 168
 ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, 169
 --subnet-type <subnet_type>
 subnet-list command line option, 204
 --summary_period <summary_period>
 hardware-bandwidth command line option, 148
 virtual-bandwidth command line option, 222
 virtual-usage command line option, 231
 --tag <tag>
 dedicatedhost-list command line option, 122
 dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, 124
 hardware-edit command line option, 152
 hardware-list command line option, 153
 image-edit command line option, 160
 virtual-create command line option, 224
 virtual-edit command line option, 226
 virtual-list command line option, 227
 --tags <tags>
 autoscale-tag command line option, 98
 subnet-edit command line option, 203
 tags-set command line option, 205
 vlan-edit command line option, 216
 --template <template>
 dedicatedhost-create command line option, 123
 hardware-create command line option, 150
 user-create command line option, 214

- user-edit-details command line option, [213](#)
- virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
- test
 - hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, [159](#)
 - subnet-create command line option, [202](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
- test <test>
 - globalip-create command line option, [147](#)
- tier <tier>
 - block-replica-order command line option, [101](#)
 - block-snapshot-order command line option, [106](#)
 - block-volume-order command line option, [110](#)
 - file-replica-order command line option, [133](#)
 - file-snapshot-order command line option, [137](#)
 - file-volume-order command line option, [141](#)
- timeout <timeout>
 - loadbal-health command line option, [173](#)
- title <title>
 - ticket-create command line option, [207](#)
- to
 - autoscale-scale command line option, [97](#)
- transient
 - virtual-create command line option, [225](#)
- transient <transient>
 - virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
- translation-id <translation_id>
 - ipsec-translation-remove command line option, [170](#)
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, [171](#)
- ttl <ttl>
 - dns-record-add command line option, [126](#)
 - dns-record-edit command line option, [127](#)
 - dns-record-list command line option, [127](#)
 - hardware-dns-sync command line option, [157](#)
 - virtual-dns-sync command line option, [225](#)
- type <record_type>
 - dns-record-list command line option, [127](#)
- type <subnet_type>
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [168](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, [169](#)
- up
 - autoscale-scale command line option, [97](#)
- upgrade
 - block-snapshot-order command line option, [106](#)
 - file-snapshot-order command line option, [137](#)
- url <url>
 - loadbal-health command line option, [173](#)
- userdata <userdata>
 - autoscale-edit command line option, [98](#)
 - hardware-edit command line option, [152](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [188](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-edit command line option, [226](#)
- userfile <userfile>
 - autoscale-edit command line option, [98](#)
 - hardware-edit command line option, [152](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [188](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-edit command line option, [226](#)
- username <username>
 - block-volume-list command line option, [109](#)
 - email-edit command line option, [129](#)
 - file-volume-list command line option, [140](#)
- username-storage <username_storage>
 - hardware-authorize-storage command line option, [158](#)
 - virtual-authorize-storage command line option, [233](#)
- utc-offset <utc_offset>
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
- uuid <uuid>
 - loadbal-health command line option, [173](#)
- v4
 - subnet-list command line option, [204](#)
- v6
 - subnet-create command line option, [202](#)
 - subnet-list command line option, [204](#)
- valid_type <valid_type>
 - virtual-usage command line option, [231](#)
- verify
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [122](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [179](#)
 - order-place command line option, [186](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [188](#)
- virtual
 - report-bandwidth command line option, [191](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [211](#)
- virtual <virtual_identifier>
 - ticket-attach command line option, [210](#)
 - ticket-create command line option, [207](#)
 - ticket-detach command line option, [210](#)
- virtual-id <virtual_id>

block-access-authorize command line option, 99
 block-access-revoke command line option, 100
 file-access-authorize command line option, 131
 file-access-revoke command line option, 132
 --vlan-private <vlan_private>
 virtual-create command line option, 224
 --vlan-public <vlan_public>
 virtual-create command line option, 224
 --vsi-type <vsi_type>
 virtual-create-options command line option, 225
 --wait <wait>
 hardware-create command line option, 150
 hardware-ready command line option, 157
 virtual-create command line option, 224
 virtual-ready command line option, 229
 --weight <weight>
 dns-record-add command line option, 126
 loadbal-member-add command line option, 174
 --wrapped-dek <wrapped_dek>
 image-import command line option, 161
 --zone <zone>
 dns-record-add command line option, 126
 -a
 config-setup command line option, 121
 hardware-dns-sync command line option, 157
 setup command line option, 121
 virtual-dns-sync command line option, 225
 virtual-migrate command line option, 233
 -b
 cdn-origin-add command line option, 115
 loadbal-order command line option, 178
 loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
 loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
 -c
 block-volume-duplicate command line option, 108
 block-volume-modify command line option, 109
 cdn-edit command line option, 117
 cdn-origin-add command line option, 116
 dedicatedhost-list command line option, 122
 dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, 124
 file-volume-duplicate command line option, 139
 file-volume-modify command line option, 141
 hardware-list command line option, 153
 loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
 loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
 object-storage-credential-delete command line option, 181
 order-item-list command line option, 185
 virtual-create command line option, 223
 virtual-list command line option, 227
 -d
 autoscale-logs command line option, 97
 block-volume-count command line option, 107
 block-volume-list command line option, 109
 dedicatedhost-create command line option, 122
 dedicatedhost-create-options command line option, 123
 dedicatedhost-list command line option, 122
 event-log-get command line option, 130
 file-volume-count command line option, 139
 file-volume-list command line option, 140
 hardware-create command line option, 150
 hardware-list command line option, 153
 licenses-create command line option, 172
 loadbal-order command line option, 178
 loadbal-order-options command line option, 179
 securitygroup-create command line option, 193
 securitygroup-edit command line option, 193
 securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 194
 securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 195
 subnet-list command line option, 204
 tags-cleanup command line option, 206
 tags-list command line option, 205
 virtual-create command line option, 223
 virtual-list command line option, 227
 vlan-create command line option, 215
 vlan-list command line option, 217
 -e
 cdn-origin-add command line option, 116
 event-log-get command line option, 130
 hardware-bandwidth command line option, 148
 hardware-create command line option, 150

- securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [194](#)
- securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [195](#)
- user-create command line option, [214](#)
- user-detail command line option, [211](#)
- virtual-bandwidth command line option, [222](#)
- virtual-usage command line option, [231](#)
- vlan-edit command line option, [216](#)
- f
 - call-api command line option, [119](#)
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [122](#)
 - dedicatedhost-create-options command line option, [123](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [178](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [175](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [176](#)
 - sshkey-add command line option, [198](#)
 - sshkey-print command line option, [199](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [223](#)
- g
 - autoscale-tag command line option, [98](#)
 - hardware-edit command line option, [152](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-edit command line option, [226](#)
 - virtual-migrate command line option, [233](#)
 - vlan-edit command line option, [216](#)
- h
 - block-access-authorize command line option, [99](#)
 - block-access-revoke command line option, [100](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [131](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [132](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [211](#)
 - virtual-migrate command line option, [233](#)
- ha
 - firewall-add command line option, [145](#)
- i
 - block-access-authorize command line option, [99](#)
 - block-access-revoke command line option, [100](#)
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, [108](#)
 - block-volume-modify command line option, [109](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [131](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [132](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [139](#)
 - file-volume-modify command line option, [141](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
 - hardware-reload command line option, [155](#)
 - ipsec-detail command line option, [164](#)
 - loadbal-health command line option, [173](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [188](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, [196](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, [197](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-reload command line option, [232](#)
- k
 - hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
 - hardware-reload command line option, [155](#)
 - licenses-create command line option, [172](#)
 - order-item-list command line option, [185](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [188](#)
 - sshkey-add command line option, [198](#)
 - sshkey-edit command line option, [198](#)
 - tags-set command line option, [205](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [211](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-reload command line option, [232](#)
- l
 - account-orders command line option, [95](#)
 - block-replica-order command line option, [101](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
 - file-replica-order command line option, [133](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [153](#)
 - hardware-reload command line option, [155](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [178](#)
 - securitygroup-list command line option, [192](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [211](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [227](#)
 - vlan-list command line option, [217](#)
- m
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, [122](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [124](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [153](#)
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [177](#)

- loadbal-member-add command line option, 174
- loadbal-member-del command line option, 174
- loadbal-order command line option, 178
- loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
- loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
- securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 195
- securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 195
- virtual-create command line option, 223
- virtual-list command line option, 227
- n
 - block-snapshot-create command line option, 103
 - block-volume-set-note command line option, 114
 - file-snapshot-create command line option, 135
 - file-volume-set-note command line option, 144
 - hardware-list command line option, 153
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, 168
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, 170
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, 171
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, 177
 - loadbal-order command line option, 178
 - securitygroup-create command line option, 193
 - securitygroup-edit command line option, 193
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, 196
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, 197
 - subnet-edit command line option, 203
 - virtual-capture command line option, 222
 - virtual-create command line option, 224
 - virtual-list command line option, 227
 - vlan-edit command line option, 216
 - vlan-list command line option, 217
- o
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, 108
 - block-volume-list command line option, 109
 - cdn-edit command line option, 117
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 116
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, 139
 - file-volume-list command line option, 140
 - hardware-create command line option, 150
 - virtual-create command line option, 223
- p
 - block-access-password command line option, 100
 - cdn-edit command line option, 118
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 115
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, 148
 - hardware-create-options command line option, 149
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
 - order-item-list command line option, 185
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 195
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 195
 - user-create command line option, 214
 - user-detail command line option, 211
 - user-edit-permissions command line option, 213
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, 222
 - virtual-create-options command line option, 225
 - virtual-usage command line option, 231
 - vlan-create command line option, 215
- q
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, 148
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, 222
- r
 - cdn-edit command line option, 117
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, 122
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, 170
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, 171
 - loadbal-health command line option, 173
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 194
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 195
 - tags-set command line option, 205
- s
 - block-replica-order command line option, 101
 - block-snapshot-restore command line

- option, [106](#)
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, [108](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [131](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [132](#)
 - file-replica-order command line option, [133](#)
 - file-snapshot-restore command line option, [138](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [140](#)
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, [148](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [168](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, [169](#)
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, [170](#)
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, [171](#)
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [177](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [178](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [175](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [176](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, [196](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, [197](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [194](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [195](#)
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, [222](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-usage command line option, [231](#)
- t
- block-volume-duplicate command line option, [108](#)
 - block-volume-modify command line option, [109](#)
 - cdn-edit command line option, [117](#)
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [115](#)
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [123](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [130](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [139](#)
 - file-volume-modify command line option, [141](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [150](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [168](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, [169](#)
 - ipsec-translation-remove command line option, [170](#)
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, [171](#)
 - loadbal-health command line option, [173](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [176](#)
 - subnet-edit command line option, [203](#)
 - subnet-list command line option, [204](#)
 - tags-set command line option, [205](#)
 - user-create command line option, [214](#)
 - user-edit-details command line option, [213](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-usage command line option, [231](#)
- u
- block-volume-list command line option, [109](#)
 - file-volume-list command line option, [140](#)
 - hardware-authorize-storage command line option, [158](#)
 - hardware-edit command line option, [152](#)
 - loadbal-health command line option, [173](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [188](#)
 - user-create command line option, [214](#)
 - user-edit-permissions command line option, [213](#)
 - virtual-authorize-storage command line option, [233](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [224](#)
 - virtual-edit command line option, [226](#)
- v
- block-access-authorize command line option, [99](#)
 - block-access-revoke command line option, [100](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [131](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [132](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [211](#)
- v6
- globalip-create command line option, [147](#)
- w
- loadbal-member-add command line option, [174](#)
- x
- loadbal-pool-add command line option, [175](#)

- loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
- z
 - event-log-get command line option, 130
- A**
- ACCESS_ID
 - block-access-password command line option, 101
 - block-subnets-assign command line option, 112
 - block-subnets-list command line option, 112
 - block-subnets-remove command line option, 113
- account-cancel-item command line option IDENTIFIER, 95
- account-event-detail command line option
 - ack, 93
 - IDENTIFIER, 94
- account-events command line option
 - ack-all, 93
- account-invoice-detail command line option
 - details, 94
 - IDENTIFIER, 94
- account-invoices command line option
 - all, 94
 - closed, 94
 - limit <limit>, 94
- account-item-detail command line option IDENTIFIER, 95
- account-orders command line option
 - limit <limit>, 95
 - l, 95
- AccountManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.account), 8
- ack_event() (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager method), 8
- add_certificate() (SoftLayer.managers.ssl.SSLManager method), 64
- add_event_filter() (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager static method), 8
- add_global_ip() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 51
- add_internal_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager method), 44
- add_key() (SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager method), 63
- add_lb_l7_pool() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 48
- add_lb_listener() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 48
- add_lb_member() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 48
- add_locations() (SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method), 42
- add_origin() (SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager method), 18
- add_remote_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager method), 44
- add_securitygroup_rule() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 51
- add_securitygroup_rules() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 52
- add_service_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager method), 45
- add_standard_firewall() (SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager method), 34
- add_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 52
- add_vlan_firewall() (SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager method), 34
- apply_configuration() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager method), 45
- assign_global_ip() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 52
- assign_subnets_to_acl() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 11
- attach_hardware() (SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method), 65
- attach_portable_storage() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 67
- attach_securitygroup_component() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 52
- attach_securitygroup_components() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 52
- attach_virtual_server() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 52

Layer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method), 65

authenticate_with_iam_token() (*SoftLayer.IAMClient* method), 84

authenticate_with_passcode() (*SoftLayer.IAMClient* method), 84

authenticate_with_password() (*SoftLayer.BaseClient* method), 82

authenticate_with_password() (*SoftLayer.IAMClient* method), 84

authorize_host_to_volume() (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 12

authorize_host_to_volume() (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 28

authorize_storage() (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager* method), 36

authorize_storage() (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* method), 67

autoscale-detail command line option IDENTIFIER, 96

autoscale-edit command line option -F, 98

--cpu <cpu>, 98

--max <maximum>, 98

--memory <memory>, 98

--min <minimum>, 98

--name <name>, 98

--userdata <userdata>, 98

--userfile <userfile>, 98

IDENTIFIER, 98

autoscale-logs command line option --date-min <date_min>, 97

-d, 97

IDENTIFIER, 97

autoscale-scale command line option --amount <amount>, 97

--by, 97

--down, 97

--to, 97

--up, 97

IDENTIFIER, 97

autoscale-tag command line option --tags <tags>, 98

-g, 98

IDENTIFIER, 98

AutoScaleManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.autoscale*), 10

BasicAuthentication (class in *SoftLayer*), 83

block-access-authorize command line option --hardware-id <hardware_id>, 99

--ip-address <ip_address>, 99

--ip-address-id <ip_address_id>, 99

--virtual-id <virtual_id>, 99

-h, 99

-i, 99

-v, 99

VOLUME_ID, 99

block-access-list command line option --columns <columns>, 99

--sortby <sortby>, 99

VOLUME_ID, 100

block-access-password command line option --password <password>, 100

-p, 100

ACCESS_ID, 101

block-access-revoke command line option --hardware-id <hardware_id>, 100

--ip-address <ip_address>, 100

--ip-address-id <ip_address_id>, 100

--virtual-id <virtual_id>, 100

-h, 100

-i, 100

-v, 100

VOLUME_ID, 100

block-disaster-recovery-failover command line option --replicant-id <replicant_id>, 114

VOLUME_ID, 114

block-replica-failback command line option VOLUME_ID, 101

block-replica-failover command line option --replicant-id <replicant_id>, 101

VOLUME_ID, 101

block-replica-locations command line option --columns <columns>, 102

--sortby <sortby>, 102

VOLUME_ID, 103

block-replica-order command line option --location <location>, 101

--os-type <os_type>, 102

--snapshot-schedule <snapshot_schedule>, 101

--tier <tier>, 101

-l, 101

-s, 101

VOLUME_ID, 102

block-replica-partners command line option --columns <columns>, 102

--sortby <sortby>, 102

VOLUME_ID, 102

block-snapshot-cancel command line option

B

BaseClient (class in *SoftLayer*), 82


```

--immediate, 103
--reason <reason>, 103
VOLUME_ID, 103
block-snapshot-create command line option
--notes <notes>, 103
-n, 103
VOLUME_ID, 103
block-snapshot-delete command line option
SNAPSHOT_ID, 104
block-snapshot-disable command line option
--schedule-type <schedule_type>, 104
VOLUME_ID, 104
block-snapshot-enable command line option
--day-of-week <day_of_week>, 104
--hour <hour>, 104
--minute <minute>, 104
--retention-count <retention_count>, 104
--schedule-type <schedule_type>, 104
VOLUME_ID, 105
block-snapshot-list command line option
--columns <columns>, 105
--sortby <sortby>, 105
VOLUME_ID, 105
block-snapshot-order command line option
--capacity <capacity>, 106
--tier <tier>, 106
--upgrade, 106
VOLUME_ID, 106
block-snapshot-restore command line option
--snapshot-id <snapshot_id>, 106
-s, 106
VOLUME_ID, 106
block-snapshot-schedule-list command line
option
VOLUME_ID, 105
block-subnets-assign command line option
--subnet-id <subnet_id>, 112
ACCESS_ID, 112
block-subnets-list command line option
ACCESS_ID, 112
block-subnets-remove command line option
--subnet-id <subnet_id>, 113
ACCESS_ID, 113
block-volume-cancel command line option
--immediate, 107
--reason <reason>, 107
VOLUME_ID, 107
block-volume-convert command line option
VOLUME_ID, 112, 113
block-volume-count command line option
--datacenter <datacenter>, 107
--sortby <sortby>, 107
-d, 107
block-volume-detail command line option
VOLUME_ID, 107
block-volume-duplicate command line option
--billing <billing>, 108
--dependent-duplicate
    <dependent_duplicate>, 108
--duplicate-iops <duplicate_iops>, 108
--duplicate-size <duplicate_size>, 108
--duplicate-snapshot-size
    <duplicate_snapshot_size>, 108
--duplicate-tier <duplicate_tier>, 108
--origin-snapshot-id
    <origin_snapshot_id>, 108
-c, 108
-i, 108
-o, 108
-s, 108
-t, 108
ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID, 108
block-volume-limits command line option
--sortby <sortby>, 111
block-volume-list command line option
--columns <columns>, 109
--datacenter <datacenter>, 109
--order <order>, 109
--sortby <sortby>, 109
--storage-type <storage_type>, 109
--username <username>, 109
-d, 109
-o, 109
-u, 109
block-volume-modify command line option
--new-iops <new_iops>, 109
--new-size <new_size>, 109
--new-tier <new_tier>, 109
-c, 109
-i, 109
-t, 109
VOLUME_ID, 110
block-volume-order command line option
--billing <billing>, 110
--iops <iops>, 110
--location <location>, 110
--os-type <os_type>, 110
--service-offering <service_offering>,
    110
--size <size>, 110
--snapshot-size <snapshot_size>, 110
--storage-type <storage_type>, 110
--tier <tier>, 110
block-volume-refresh command line option
SNAPSHOT_ID, 111, 113
VOLUME_ID, 111, 113
block-volume-set-lun-id command line option
LUN_ID, 111

```

VOLUME_ID, 111
 block-volume-set-note command line option
 --note <note>, 114
 -n, 114
 VOLUME_ID, 114
 BlockStorageManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.block), 11
 build_filter() (SoftLayer.managers.event_log.EventLogManager static method), 27

C

call() (SoftLayer.BaseClient method), 82
 call() (SoftLayer.IAMClient method), 84
 call-api command line option
 --filter <_filters>, 119
 --id <id>, 119
 --json-filter <json_filter>, 119
 --limit <limit>, 119
 --mask <mask>, 119
 --no-output-python, 119
 --offset <offset>, 119
 --orderBy <orderby>, 119
 --output-python, 119
 -f, 119
 METHOD, 119
 PARAMETERS, 119
 SERVICE, 119
 cancel_block_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 12
 cancel_file_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 28
 cancel_firewall() (SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager method), 34
 cancel_global_ip() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 52
 cancel_guests() (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager method), 21
 cancel_hardware() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 36
 cancel_host() (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager method), 21
 cancel_instance() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 67
 cancel_item() (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager method), 8

cancel_item() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 52
 cancel_lbaas() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 48
 cancel_snapshot_space() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 12
 cancel_snapshot_space() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 28
 cancel_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 53
 cancel_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 12
 cancel_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 28
 CapacityManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity), 77
 capture() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 68
 cdn-detail command line option
 --history <history>, 115
 UNIQUE_ID, 115
 cdn-edit command line option
 -H, 117
 --cache <cache>, 117
 --header <header>, 117
 --http-port <http_port>, 117
 --origin <origin>, 117
 --performance-configuration <performance_configuration>, 118
 --respect-headers <respect_headers>, 117
 -c, 117
 -o, 117
 -p, 118
 -r, 117
 -t, 117
 IDENTIFIER, 118
 cdn-list command line option
 --sortby <sortby>, 115
 cdn-origin-add command line option
 -H, 115
 P, 115
 --bucket-name <bucket_name>, 115
 --cache-query <cache_query>, 116
 --extensions <extensions>, 116
 --header <header>, 115
 --optimize-for <optimize_for>, 116
 --origin-type <origin_type>, 115
 --port <port>, 115


```

--protocol <protocol>, 115
-b, 115
-c, 116
-e, 116
-o, 116
-p, 115
-t, 115
ORIGIN, 116
PATH, 116
UNIQUE_ID, 116
cdn-origin-list command line option
    UNIQUE_ID, 116
cdn-origin-remove command line option
    ORIGIN_PATH, 117
    UNIQUE_ID, 117
cdn-purge command line option
    PATH, 117
    UNIQUE_ID, 117
CDNManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.cdn), 18
change_port_speed() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager
    method), 37
change_port_speed() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.vs.VSManager
    method), 68
Client() (in module SoftLayer), 83
config-setup command line option
    --auth <auth>, 121
    -a, 121
CONTEXT_ID
    ipsec-configure command line option, 167
    ipsec-detail command line option, 164
    ipsec-subnet-add command line option, 168
    ipsec-subnet-remove command line option,
        169
    ipsec-translation-add command line
        option, 170
    ipsec-translation-remove command line
        option, 171
    ipsec-translation-update command line
        option, 171
    ipsec-update command line option, 166
convert_dep_dupe() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
    method), 12
convert_dep_dupe() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
    method), 29
create() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager
    method), 77
create() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager
    method), 78
create_client_from_env() (in module SoftLayer), 84
create_guest() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager
    method), 77
create_instance() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.vs.VSManager
    method), 68
create_instances() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.vs.VSManager
    method), 70
create_or_update_lun_id() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
    method), 12
create_record() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.dns.DNSManager
    method), 23
create_record_mx() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.dns.DNSManager
    method), 23
create_record_ptr() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.dns.DNSManager
    method), 24
create_record_srv() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.dns.DNSManager
    method), 24
create_remote_subnet() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager
    method), 45
create_securitygroup() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager
    method), 53
create_snapshot() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
    method), 13
create_snapshot() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
    method), 29
create_ticket() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.ticket.TicketManager
    method), 65
create_translation() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager
    method), 45
create_zone() (SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager
    method), 24
D
DATA
    dns-record-add command line option, 126
deauthorize_host_to_volume() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
    method), 13
deauthorize_host_to_volume() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
    method), 29
dedicatedhost-cancel command line option

```

IDENTIFIER, 124
dedicatedhost-cancel-guests command line option
IDENTIFIER, 124
dedicatedhost-create command line option
-D, 122
-H, 122
--billing <billing>, 122
--datacenter <datacenter>, 122
--domain <domain>, 122
--export <export>, 123
--flavor <flavor>, 122
--hostname <hostname>, 122
--router <router>, 122
--template <template>, 123
--verify, 122
-d, 122
-f, 122
-r, 122
-t, 123
dedicatedhost-create-options command line option
--datacenter <datacenter>, 123
--flavor <flavor>, 123
-d, 123
-f, 123
dedicatedhost-detail command line option
--guests, 123
--price, 123
IDENTIFIER, 123
dedicatedhost-list command line option
-D, 122
-H, 122
--columns <columns>, 122
--cpu <cpu>, 122
--datacenter <datacenter>, 122
--disk <disk>, 122
--memory <memory>, 122
--name <name>, 122
--sortby <sortby>, 122
--tag <tag>, 122
-c, 122
-d, 122
-m, 122
dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option
-D, 124
-H, 124
--columns <columns>, 124
--cpu <cpu>, 124
--domain <domain>, 124
--hostname <hostname>, 124
--memory <memory>, 124
--sortby <sortby>, 124
--tag <tag>, 124
-c, 124
-m, 124
IDENTIFIER, 125
DedicatedHostManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host), 21
del_lb_l7_pool() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 48
delete() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager method), 78
delete_image() (SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method), 42
delete_key() (SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager method), 63
delete_lb_member() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 48
delete_record() (SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method), 24
delete_remote_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 45
delete_securitygroup() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 53
delete_snapshot() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 13
delete_snapshot() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 29
delete_zone() (SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method), 24
detach_hardware() (SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method), 66
detach_securitygroup_component() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 53
detach_securitygroup_components() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 53
detach_virtual_server() (SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method), 66
details() (SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager method), 10
disable_snapshots() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 13
disable_snapshots() (SoftLayer

Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 29

`disaster_recovery_failover_to_replicant()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 13

`disaster_recovery_failover_to_replicant()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 29

`dns-import` command line option

- `--dry-run`, 125
- `ZONEFILE`, 125

`dns-record-add` command line option

- `--port <port>`, 126
- `--priority <priority>`, 126
- `--protocol <protocol>`, 126
- `--service <service>`, 126
- `--ttl <ttl>`, 126
- `--weight <weight>`, 126
- `--zone <zone>`, 126
- `DATA`, 126
- `RECORD`, 126
- `RECORD_TYPE`, 126

`dns-record-edit` command line option

- `--by-id <by_id>`, 127
- `--by-record <by_record>`, 127
- `--data <data>`, 127
- `--ttl <ttl>`, 127
- `ZONE_ID`, 127

`dns-record-list` command line option

- `--data <data>`, 127
- `--record <record>`, 127
- `--ttl <ttl>`, 127
- `--type <record_type>`, 127
- `ZONE`, 128

`dns-record-remove` command line option

- `RECORD_ID`, 128

`dns-zone-create` command line option

- `ZONE`, 128

`dns-zone-delete` command line option

- `ZONE`, 128

`dns-zone-print` command line option

- `ZONE`, 129

`DNSManager` (class in *SoftLayer.managers.dns*), 23

`dump_zone()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* method), 24

E

`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager* method), 10

`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager* method), 19

`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager* method), 37

`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager* method), 42

`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 53

`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* method), 70

`edit_certificate()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ssl.SSLManager* method), 64

`edit_dedicated_fw_rules()` (*SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager* method), 34

`edit_key()` (*SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager* method), 63

`edit_note_subnet()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 53

`edit_record()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* method), 25

`edit_securitygroup()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 54

`edit_securitygroup_rule()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 54

`edit_standard_fw_rules()` (*SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager* method), 35

`edit_zone()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* method), 25

`editObject()` (*SoftLayer.managers.email.EmailManager* method), 26

`email-detail` command line option

- `IDENTIFIER`, 129

`email-edit` command line option

- `--email <email>`, 129
- `--password <password>`, 129
- `--username <username>`, 129
- `IDENTIFIER`, 130

`EmailManager` (class in *SoftLayer.managers.email*), 26

`enable_snapshots()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 13

`enable_snapshots()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 30

`end_date` (*SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager* property), 19

`ENDPOINT_ID`

- `subnet-create` command line option, 202

`event-log-get` command line option

- `-D`, 130
- `--date-max <date_max>`, 130
- `--date-min <date_min>`, 130
- `--limit <limit>`, 130

```
--metadata, 130
--no-metadata, 130
--obj-event <obj_event>, 130
--obj-id <obj_id>, 130
--obj-type <obj_type>, 130
--utc-offset <utc_offset>, 130
-d, 130
-e, 130
-i, 130
-l, 130
-t, 130
-z, 130
EventManager (class in Soft-
    Layer.managers.event_log), 27
export_image_to_uri() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.image.ImageManager
    method), 42

F
failback_from_replicant() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
    method), 14
failback_from_replicant() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
    method), 30
failover_to_replicant() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
    method), 14
failover_to_replicant() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
    method), 30
file-access-authorize command line option
    --hardware-id <hardware_id>, 131
    --ip-address <ip_address>, 131
    --ip-address-id <ip_address_id>, 131
    --subnet-id <subnet_id>, 131
    --virtual-id <virtual_id>, 131
    -h, 131
    -i, 131
    -s, 131
    -v, 131
    VOLUME_ID, 132
file-access-list command line option
    --columns <columns>, 132
    --sortby <sortby>, 132
    VOLUME_ID, 132
file-access-revoke command line option
    --hardware-id <hardware_id>, 132
    --ip-address <ip_address>, 132
    --ip-address-id <ip_address_id>, 132
    --subnet-id <subnet_id>, 132
    --virtual-id <virtual_id>, 132
    -h, 132
    -i, 132
    -s, 132
    -v, 132
    VOLUME_ID, 133
file-disaster-recovery-failover command
    line option
    --replicant-id <replicant_id>, 144
    VOLUME_ID, 144
file-replica-failback command line option
    VOLUME_ID, 133
file-replica-failover command line option
    --replicant-id <replicant_id>, 133
    VOLUME_ID, 133
file-replica-locations command line option
    --columns <columns>, 134
    --sortby <sortby>, 134
    VOLUME_ID, 135
file-replica-order command line option
    --location <location>, 133
    --snapshot-schedule <snapshot_schedule>,
        133
    --tier <tier>, 133
    -l, 133
    -s, 133
    VOLUME_ID, 134
file-replica-partners command line option
    --columns <columns>, 134
    --sortby <sortby>, 134
    VOLUME_ID, 134
file-snapshot-cancel command line option
    --immediate, 135
    --reason <reason>, 135
    VOLUME_ID, 135
file-snapshot-create command line option
    --notes <notes>, 135
    -n, 135
    VOLUME_ID, 135
file-snapshot-delete command line option
    SNAPSHOT_ID, 136
file-snapshot-disable command line option
    --schedule-type <schedule_type>, 136
    VOLUME_ID, 136
file-snapshot-enable command line option
    --day-of-week <day_of_week>, 136
    --hour <hour>, 136
    --minute <minute>, 136
    --retention-count <retention_count>, 136
    --schedule-type <schedule_type>, 136
    VOLUME_ID, 137
file-snapshot-list command line option
    --columns <columns>, 137
    --sortby <sortby>, 137
    VOLUME_ID, 137
file-snapshot-order command line option
    --capacity <capacity>, 137
```

```

--tier <tier>, 137
--upgrade, 137
VOLUME_ID, 138
file-snapshot-restore command line option
--snapshot-id <snapshot_id>, 138
-s, 138
VOLUME_ID, 138
file-snapshot-schedule-list command line
option
VOLUME_ID, 143
file-volume-cancel command line option
--immediate, 138
--reason <reason>, 138
VOLUME_ID, 138
file-volume-convert command line option
VOLUME_ID, 143, 144
file-volume-count command line option
--datacenter <datacenter>, 139
--sortby <sortby>, 139
-d, 139
file-volume-detail command line option
VOLUME_ID, 139
file-volume-duplicate command line option
--billing <billing>, 140
--dependent-duplicate
    <dependent_duplicate>, 140
--duplicate-iops <duplicate_iops>, 139
--duplicate-size <duplicate_size>, 139
--duplicate-snapshot-size
    <duplicate_snapshot_size>, 140
--duplicate-tier <duplicate_tier>, 139
--origin-snapshot-id
    <origin_snapshot_id>, 139
-c, 139
-i, 139
-o, 139
-s, 140
-t, 139
ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID, 140
file-volume-limits command line option
--sortby <sortby>, 142
file-volume-list command line option
--columns <columns>, 140
--datacenter <datacenter>, 140
--order <order>, 140
--sortby <sortby>, 140
--storage-type <storage_type>, 140
--username <username>, 140
-d, 140
-o, 140
-u, 140
file-volume-modify command line option
--new-iops <new_iops>, 141
--new-size <new_size>, 141
--new-tier <new_tier>, 141
-c, 141
-i, 141
-t, 141
VOLUME_ID, 141
file-volume-order command line option
--billing <billing>, 142
--iops <iops>, 141
--location <location>, 142
--service-offering <service_offering>,
    142
--size <size>, 141
--snapshot-size <snapshot_size>, 142
--storage-type <storage_type>, 141
--tier <tier>, 141
file-volume-refresh command line option
SNAPSHOT_ID, 142, 143
VOLUME_ID, 142, 143
file-volume-set-note command line option
--note <note>, 144
-n, 144
VOLUME_ID, 144
FileStorageManager (class in Soft-
    Layer.managers.file), 28
filter_outlet_packages() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
    static method), 57
find_item_in_package() (in module Soft-
    Layer.managers.hardware), 41
firewall-add command line option
--firewall-type <firewall_type>, 145
--high-availability, 145
-ha, 145
TARGET, 145
firewall-cancel command line option
IDENTIFIER, 145
firewall-detail command line option
IDENTIFIER, 146
firewall-edit command line option
IDENTIFIER, 146
FirewallManager (class in Soft-
    Layer.managers.firewall), 34

```

G

```

generate_order() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
    method), 57
generate_order_template() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
    method), 58
get() (SoftLayer.managers.metadata.MetadataManager
    method), 50
get_account_all_billing_orders() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.account.AccountManager

```

<i>method</i>), 8		<i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i>	
<code>get_account_billing_items()</code>	(Soft-	<i>method</i>), 14	
	<i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i>		
<i>method</i>), 8		<code>get_cache_key_query_rule()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_account_overview()</code>	(Soft-	<i>Layer.managers.cdn.CDNManager</i>	<i>static</i>
	<i>Layer.managers.email.EmailManager</i>	<i>method</i>), 19	
<i>method</i>), 26		<code>get_cancel_failure_reasons()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_active_account_licenses()</code>	(Soft-	<i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i>	
	<i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i>	<i>method</i>), 54	
<i>method</i>), 9		<code>get_cancellation_reasons()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_active_virtual_licenses()</code>	(Soft-	<i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i>	
	<i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i>	<i>method</i>), 38	
<i>method</i>), 9		<code>get_cdn()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager
<code>get_adc()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager	<i>method</i>), 19	
<i>method</i>), 49		<code>get_certificate()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_adcs()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager	<i>Layer.managers.ssl.SSLManager</i>	<i>method</i>),
<i>method</i>), 49			
<code>get_all_rules()</code>	(Soft-	<code>get_components()</code>	(Soft-
	<i>Layer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager</i>	<i>method</i>), 38	
<i>method</i>), 78		<code>get_create_options()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_available_routers()</code>	(Soft-	<i>Layer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager</i>	
	<i>Layer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager</i>	<i>method</i>), 21	
<i>method</i>), 77		<code>get_create_options()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_backend_router_id_from_hostname()</code>	(Soft-	<i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i>	
	<i>Layer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager</i>	<i>method</i>), 38	
<i>method</i>), 79		<code>get_create_options()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_bandwidth_allocation()</code>	(Soft-	<i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i>	<i>method</i>),
	<i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i>	71	
<i>method</i>), 37		<code>get_create_options()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_bandwidth_allocation()</code>	(Soft-	<i>Layer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager</i>	
	<i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i>	<i>method</i>), 77	
<i>method</i>), 71		<code>get_dedicated_fw_rules()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_bandwidth_data()</code>	(Soft-	<i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i>	
	<i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i>	<i>method</i>), 35	
<i>method</i>), 37		<code>get_dedicated_package()</code>	(Soft-
<code>get_bandwidth_data()</code>	(Soft-	<i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i>	
	<i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i>	<i>method</i>), 35	
<i>method</i>), 71		<code>get_event()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager
<code>get_billing_item()</code>	(Soft-	<i>method</i>), 9	
	<i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i>	<code>get_event_log_types()</code>	(Soft-
<i>method</i>), 9		<i>Layer.managers.event_log.EventLogManager</i>	
<code>get_billing_item_from_invoice()</code>	(Soft-	<i>method</i>), 27	
	<i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i>	<code>get_event_logs()</code>	(Soft-
<i>method</i>), 9		<i>Layer.managers.event_log.EventLogManager</i>	
<code>get_billing_items()</code>	(Soft-	<i>method</i>), 27	
	<i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i>	<code>get_event_logs_by_request_id()</code>	(Soft-
<i>method</i>), 9		<i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i>	
<code>get_block_volume_access_list()</code>	(Soft-	<i>method</i>), 54	
	<i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i>	<code>get_file_volume_access_list()</code>	(Soft-
<i>method</i>), 14		<i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i>	
<code>get_block_volume_details()</code>	(Soft-	<i>method</i>), 30	
	<i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i>	<code>get_file_volume_details()</code>	(Soft-
<i>method</i>), 14		<i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i>	
<code>get_block_volume_snapshot_list()</code>	(Soft-	<i>method</i>), 30	

<code>get_file_volume_snapshot_list()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 30	<code>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 58</code>
<code>get_firewalls()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager method), 35	<code>get_item_prices_by_location()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 58
<code>get_hard_drives()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 38	<code>get_key()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager method), 63
<code>get_hardware()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 38	<code>get_lb()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 49
<code>get_hardware_guests()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 38	<code>get_lbaas()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 49
<code>get_hardware_guests()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.vc.VSManager method), 71	<code>get_lbaas_by_name()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 49
<code>get_hardware_item_prices()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 38	<code>get_lbaas_uuid_id()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 49
<code>get_host()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager method), 21		<code>get_local_disks()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.vc.VSManager method), 72
<code>get_image()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method), 43		<code>get_location_id()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 58
<code>get_instance()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.email.EmailManager method), 26		<code>get_locations_list()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method), 43
<code>get_instance()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager method), 35		<code>get_logs()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager method), 10
<code>get_instance()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 38		<code>get_maintenance_windows_detail()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 38
<code>get_instance()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.vc.VSManager method), 71		<code>get_nas_credentials()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 54
<code>get_invoices()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager method), 9		<code>get_network_message_delivery_accounts()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager method), 9
<code>get_ip_by_address()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 54		<code>get_object()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.vc_capacity.CapacityManager method), 77
<code>get_item_capacity()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 58		<code>get_object()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.vc_placement.PlacementManager method), 79
<code>get_item_detail()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager method), 9		<code>get_only_active_packages()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager static method), 58
<code>get_item_price()</code> (in module SoftLayer.managers.hardware), 42		<code>get_order_container()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 58
<code>get_item_price_id()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager static method), 58		<code>get_order_detail()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 58
<code>get_item_prices()</code> (Soft-		<code>get_origins()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager method), 20
		<code>get_package_by_key()</code> (Soft-

<i>method</i>), 59		<code>get_routers()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager</i> <i>method</i>), 79	
<code>get_package_by_type()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> <i>method</i>), 59		<code>get_rule_id_from_name()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager</i> <i>method</i>), 79	
<code>get_package_id_by_type()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> <i>method</i>), 59		<code>get_securitygroup()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> <i>method</i>), 54	
<code>get_packages_of_type()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> <i>method</i>), 59		<code>get_standard_fw_rules()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i> <i>method</i>), 35	
<code>get_pods()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> <i>method</i>), 54		<code>get_standard_package()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i> <i>method</i>), 35	
<code>get_policy()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager</i> <i>method</i>), 11		<code>get_statistics()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.email.EmailManager</i> <i>method</i>), 26	
<code>get_portable_storage()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> <i>method</i>), 72		<code>get_storage_credentials()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i> <i>method</i>), 39	
<code>get_preset_by_key()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> <i>method</i>), 59		<code>get_storage_credentials()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> <i>method</i>), 72	
<code>get_preset_prices()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> <i>method</i>), 59		<code>get_storage_details()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i> <i>method</i>), 39	
<code>get_price_id_list()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> <i>method</i>), 59		<code>get_storage_details()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> <i>method</i>), 72	
<code>get_quote_details()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> <i>method</i>), 60		<code>get_storage_locations()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.image.ImageManager</i> <i>method</i>), 43	
<code>get_quotes()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> <i>method</i>), 60		<code>get_subnet()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> <i>method</i>), 55	
<code>get_record()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager</i> <i>method</i>), 25		<code>get_subnet_item_price()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> <i>static method</i>), 55	
<code>get_records()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager</i> <i>method</i>), 25		<code>get_subnets_in_acl()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> <i>method</i>), 15	
<code>get_replication_locations()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> <i>method</i>), 14		<code>get_summary()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager</i> <i>method</i>), 10	
<code>get_replication_locations()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i> <i>method</i>), 31		<code>get_summary_data_usage()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> <i>method</i>), 72	
<code>get_replication_partners()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> <i>method</i>), 14		<code>get_ticket()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager</i> <i>method</i>), 66	
<code>get_replication_partners()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i> <i>method</i>), 31		<code>get_tracking_id()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i> <i>method</i>), 39	
<code>get_request()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.BasicAuthentication</i> <i>method</i>), 83		<code>get_tracking_id()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> <i>method</i>), 72	
<code>get_router_options()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager</i> <i>method</i>), 22		<code>get_translation()</code> (<i>Soft-</i>	
<code>get_routers()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager</i> <i>method</i>), 10			

Layer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger
method), 45

`get_translations()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger
method), 46

`get_tunnel_context()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger
method), 46

`get_tunnel_contexts()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger
method), 46

`get_upcoming_events()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.account.AccountManager
method), 10

`get_usage_metrics()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.cdn.CDNManager method),
20

`get_virtual_guests()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager
method), 11

`get_vlan()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager*
method), 55

`get_volume_access_list()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
method), 15

`get_volume_access_list()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
method), 31

`get_volume_count_limits()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
method), 15

`get_volume_count_limits()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
method), 31

`get_volume_details()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
method), 15

`get_volume_details()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
method), 31

`get_volume_snapshot_list()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
method), 15

`get_volume_snapshot_list()` (Soft-
Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
method), 31

`get_zone()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager*
method), 25

`globalip-assign` command line option
IDENTIFIER, 146
TARGET, 146

`globalip-cancel` command line option
IDENTIFIER, 147

`globalip-create` command line option
--ipv6, 147
--test <test>, 147
-v6, 147
`globalip-list` command line option
--ip-version <ip_version>, 147
`globalip-unassign` command line option
IDENTIFIER, 147
GROUP_ID
`securitygroup-edit` command line option,
193

H

`hardware-authorize-storage` command line
option
--username-storage <username_storage>,
158
-u, 158
IDENTIFIER, 158
`hardware-bandwidth` command line option
--end_date <end_date>, 148
--quite_summary, 148
--start_date <start_date>, 148
--summary_period <summary_period>, 148
-e, 148
-p, 148
-q, 148
-s, 148
IDENTIFIER, 148
`hardware-billing` command line option
IDENTIFIER, 152
`hardware-cancel` command line option
--comment <comment>, 149
--immediate, 149
--reason <reason>, 149
IDENTIFIER, 149
`hardware-create` command line option
-D, 150
-H, 150
--billing <billing>, 150
--datacenter <datacenter>, 150
--domain <domain>, 150
--export <export>, 150
--extra <extra>, 150
--hostname <hostname>, 150
--key <key>, 150
--network <network>, 150
--no-public, 150
--os <os>, 150
--port-speed <port_speed>, 150
--postinstall <postinstall>, 150
--router-private <router_private>, 150
--router-public <router_public>, 150
--size <size>, 150
--template <template>, 150

--test, 150
--wait <wait>, 150
-d, 150
-e, 150
-i, 150
-k, 150
-o, 150
-s, 150
-t, 150
hardware-create-options command line option
--prices, 149
-p, 149
LOCATION, 149
hardware-credentials command line option
IDENTIFIER, 151
hardware-detail command line option
--components, 151
--passwords, 151
--price, 151
IDENTIFIER, 151
hardware-dns-sync command line option
--a-record, 157
--aaaa-record, 157
--ptr, 157
--ttl <ttl>, 157
-a, 157
IDENTIFIER, 157
hardware-edit command line option
-D, 152
-F, 152
-H, 152
--degraded, 152
--domain <domain>, 152
--hostname <hostname>, 152
--private-speed <private_speed>, 152
--public-speed <public_speed>, 152
--redundant, 152
--tag <tag>, 152
--userdata <userdata>, 152
--userfile <userfile>, 152
-g, 152
-u, 152
IDENTIFIER, 152
hardware-guests command line option
IDENTIFIER, 158
hardware-list command line option
-D, 153
-H, 153
--columns <columns>, 153
--cpu <cpu>, 153
--datacenter <datacenter>, 153
--domain <domain>, 153
--hostname <hostname>, 153
--limit <limit>, 153
--memory <memory>, 153
--network <network>, 153
--sortby <sortby>, 153
--tag <tag>, 153
-c, 153
-d, 153
-l, 153
-m, 153
-n, 153
hardware-power-cycle command line option
IDENTIFIER, 154
hardware-power-off command line option
IDENTIFIER, 154
hardware-power-on command line option
IDENTIFIER, 154
hardware-ready command line option
--wait <wait>, 157
IDENTIFIER, 157
hardware-reboot command line option
--hard, 155
--soft, 155
IDENTIFIER, 155
hardware-reflash-firmware command line
option
IDENTIFIER, 156
hardware-reload command line option
--key <key>, 155
--lvm, 155
--postinstall <postinstall>, 155
-i, 155
-k, 155
-l, 155
IDENTIFIER, 155
hardware-rescue command line option
IDENTIFIER, 155
hardware-storage command line option
IDENTIFIER, 158
hardware-toggle-ipmi command line option
--disable, 156
--enable, 156
IDENTIFIER, 156
hardware-update-firmware command line
option
IDENTIFIER, 156
hardware-upgrade command line option
--add-disk <add_disk>, 159
--drive-controller <drive_controller>, 159
--memory <memory>, 159
--network <network>, 159
--public-bandwidth <public_bandwidth>, 159
--resize-disk <resize_disk>, 159
--test, 159

- IDENTIFIER, 159
- HardwareManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.hardware*), 36
- has_firewall() (in module *SoftLayer.managers.firewall*), 35
- |
- IAMClient (class in *SoftLayer*), 83
- IDENTIFIER
- account-cancel-item command line option, 95
 - account-event-detail command line option, 94
 - account-invoice-detail command line option, 94
 - account-item-detail command line option, 95
 - autoscale-detail command line option, 96
 - autoscale-edit command line option, 98
 - autoscale-logs command line option, 97
 - autoscale-scale command line option, 97
 - autoscale-tag command line option, 98
 - cdn-edit command line option, 118
 - dedicatedhost-cancel command line option, 124
 - dedicatedhost-cancel-guests command line option, 124
 - dedicatedhost-detail command line option, 123
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, 125
 - email-detail command line option, 129
 - email-edit command line option, 130
 - firewall-cancel command line option, 145
 - firewall-detail command line option, 146
 - firewall-edit command line option, 146
 - globalip-assign command line option, 146
 - globalip-cancel command line option, 147
 - globalip-unassign command line option, 147
 - hardware-authorize-storage command line option, 158
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, 148
 - hardware-billing command line option, 152
 - hardware-cancel command line option, 149
 - hardware-credentials command line option, 151
 - hardware-detail command line option, 151
 - hardware-dns-sync command line option, 157
 - hardware-edit command line option, 152
 - hardware-guests command line option, 158
 - hardware-power-cycle command line option, 154
 - hardware-power-off command line option, 154
 - hardware-power-on command line option, 154
 - hardware-ready command line option, 157
 - hardware-reboot command line option, 155
 - hardware-reflash-firmware command line option, 156
 - hardware-reload command line option, 155
 - hardware-rescue command line option, 155
 - hardware-storage command line option, 158
 - hardware-toggle-ipmi command line option, 156
 - hardware-update-firmware command line option, 156
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, 159
 - image-datacenter command line option, 162
 - image-delete command line option, 159
 - image-detail command line option, 160
 - image-edit command line option, 160
 - image-export command line option, 162
 - loadbal-cancel command line option, 179
 - loadbal-detail command line option, 173
 - loadbal-health command line option, 174
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, 178
 - loadbal-l7pool-del command line option, 178
 - loadbal-member-add command line option, 174
 - loadbal-member-del command line option, 174
 - loadbal-ns-detail command line option, 179
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, 175
 - loadbal-pool-del command line option, 177
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
 - nas-credentials command line option, 180
 - object-storage-credential-create command line option, 182
 - object-storage-credential-delete command line option, 182
 - object-storage-credential-limit command line option, 181
 - object-storage-credential-list command line option, 181
 - order-lookup command line option, 191
 - securitygroup-detail command line option, 192
 - sshkey-edit command line option, 199
 - sshkey-print command line option, 199

sshkey-remove command line option, 198
ssl-download command line option, 200
ssl-edit command line option, 201
ssl-remove command line option, 201
subnet-cancel command line option, 202
subnet-detail command line option, 203
subnet-edit command line option, 203
subnet-edit-ip command line option, 205
tags-delete command line option, 206
tags-details command line option, 206
ticket-attach command line option, 210
ticket-detach command line option, 210
ticket-detail command line option, 208
ticket-update command line option, 209
ticket-upload command line option, 209
user-delete command line option, 214
user-detail command line option, 211
user-edit-permissions command line option, 213
user-permissions command line option, 212
virtual-authorize-storage command line option, 234
virtual-bandwidth command line option, 222
virtual-billing command line option, 231
virtual-cancel command line option, 222
virtual-capture command line option, 223
virtual-credentials command line option, 233
virtual-detail command line option, 232
virtual-dns-sync command line option, 226
virtual-edit command line option, 226
virtual-pause command line option, 228
virtual-power-off command line option, 228
virtual-power-on command line option, 228
virtual-ready command line option, 230
virtual-reboot command line option, 229
virtual-reload command line option, 232
virtual-rescue command line option, 229
virtual-resume command line option, 229
virtual-storage command line option, 231
virtual-upgrade command line option, 230
virtual-usage command line option, 231
vlan-cancel command line option, 217
vlan-detail command line option, 216
vlan-edit command line option, 217
image-datacenter command line option
 --add, 162
 --remove, 162
 IDENTIFIER, 162
 LOCATIONS, 162
image-delete command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 159
image-detail command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 160
image-edit command line option
 --name <name>, 160
 --note <note>, 160
 --tag <tag>, 160
 IDENTIFIER, 160
image-export command line option
 --ibm-api-key <ibm_api_key>, 162
 IDENTIFIER, 162
 URI, 162
image-import command line option
 --byol, 161
 --cloud-init, 161
 --ibm-api-key <ibm_api_key>, 161
 --is-encrypted, 161
 --note <note>, 161
 --os-code <os_code>, 161
 --root-key-crn <root_key_crn>, 161
 --wrapped-dek <wrapped_dek>, 161
 NAME, 161
 URI, 161
image-list command line option
 --name <name>, 160
 --private, 160
 --public, 160
ImageManager (*class in SoftLayer.managers.image*), 42
import_image_from_uri() (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method*), 43
IP_ADDRESS
 subnet-lookup command line option, 204
ip_lookup() (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method*), 55
ipsec-configure command line option
 CONTEXT_ID, 167
ipsec-detail command line option
 --include <include>, 164
 -i, 164
 CONTEXT_ID, 164
ipsec-subnet-add command line option
 --network <network_identifier>, 168
 --network-identifier, 168
 --subnet-id <subnet_id>, 168
 --subnet-type, 168
 --type <subnet_type>, 168
 -n, 168
 -s, 168
 -t, 168
 CONTEXT_ID, 168
ipsec-subnet-remove command line option
 --subnet-id <subnet_id>, 169
 --subnet-type, 169
 --type <subnet_type>, 169

-s, 169
 -t, 169
 CONTEXT_ID, 169
 ipsec-translation-add command line option
 --note <note>, 170
 --remote-ip <remote_ip>, 170
 --static-ip <static_ip>, 170
 -n, 170
 -r, 170
 -s, 170
 CONTEXT_ID, 170
 ipsec-translation-remove command line option
 --translation-id <translation_id>, 170
 -t, 170
 CONTEXT_ID, 171
 ipsec-translation-update command line option
 --note <note>, 171
 --remote-ip <remote_ip>, 171
 --static-ip <static_ip>, 171
 --translation-id <translation_id>, 171
 -n, 171
 -r, 171
 -s, 171
 -t, 171
 CONTEXT_ID, 171
 ipsec-update command line option
 --friendly-name <friendly_name>, 165
 --p1-auth <phase1_auth>, 165
 --p1-crypto <phase1_crypto>, 166
 --p1-dh <phase1_dh>, 166
 --p1-key-ttl <phase1_key_ttl>, 166
 --p2-auth <phase2_auth>, 166
 --p2-crypto <phase2_crypto>, 166
 --p2-dh <phase2_dh>, 166
 --p2-forward-secrecy <phase2_forward_secrecy>, 166
 --p2-key-ttl <phase2_key_ttl>, 166
 --phase1-auth, 165
 --phase1-crypto, 166
 --phase1-dh, 166
 --phase1-key-ttl, 166
 --phase2-auth, 166
 --phase2-crypto, 166
 --phase2-dh, 166
 --phase2-forward-secrecy, 166
 --phase2-key-ttl, 166
 --preshared-key <preshared_key>, 165
 --remote-peer <remote_peer>, 165
 CONTEXT_ID, 166
 IPSECManger (class in SoftLayer.managers.ipsec), 44
 iter_call() (SoftLayer.BaseClient method), 83

K

KEY

licenses-cancel command line option, 172

L

LABEL

sshkey-add command line option, 198

lbaas_order_options() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 49

licenses-cancel command line option

 --immediate, 172

 KEY, 172

licenses-create command line option

 --datacenter <datacenter>, 172

 --key <key>, 172

 -d, 172

 -k, 172

list() (SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager method), 11

list() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager method), 78

list() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager method), 79

list_block_volume_limit() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 15

list_block_volumes() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 15

list_categories() (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 60

list_cdn() (SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager method), 20

list_certs() (SoftLayer.managers.ssl.SSLManager method), 64

list_file_volume_limit() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 31

list_file_volumes() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 31

list_global_ips() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 55

list_guests() (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager method), 22

list_hardware() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 39

list_instances() (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager method), 22

`list_instances()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* method), 72
`list_items()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager* method), 60
`list_keys()` (*SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager* method), 63
`list_packages()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager* method), 60
`list_presets()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager* method), 60
`list_private_images()` (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager* method), 43
`list_public_images()` (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager* method), 44
`list_securitygroup_rules()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 55
`list_securitygroups()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 55
`list_subjects()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager* method), 66
`list_subnets()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 55
`list_tickets()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager* method), 66
`list_vlans()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 56
`list_volume_schedules()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 16
`list_volume_schedules()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 32
`list_zones()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* method), 25
LISTENER
 loadbal-pool-del command line option, 177
 loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 176
loadbal-cancel command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 179
loadbal-detail command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 173
loadbal-health command line option
 --interval <interval>, 173
 --retry <retry>, 173
 --timeout <timeout>, 173
 --url <url>, 173
 --uuid <uuid>, 173
 -i, 173
 -r, 173
 -t, 173
 -u, 173
 IDENTIFIER, 174
loadbal-l7pool-add command line option
 -P, 177
 -S, 177
 --healthInterval <healthinterval>, 177
 --healthPath <healthpath>, 177
 --healthRetry <healthretry>, 177
 --healthTimeout <healthtimeout>, 177
 --method <method>, 177
 --name <name>, 177
 --protocol <protocol>, 177
 --server <server>, 177
 --sticky, 177
 -m, 177
 -n, 177
 -s, 177
 IDENTIFIER, 178
loadbal-l7pool-del command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 178
loadbal-member-add command line option
 --member <member>, 174
 --private, 174
 --public, 174
 --weight <weight>, 174
 -m, 174
 -w, 174
 IDENTIFIER, 174
loadbal-member-del command line option
 --member <member>, 174
 -m, 174
 IDENTIFIER, 174
loadbal-ns-detail command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 179
loadbal-order command line option
 --backend <backend>, 178
 --datacenter <datacenter>, 178
 --frontend <frontend>, 178
 --label <label>, 178
 --method <method>, 178
 --name <name>, 178
 --public, 178
 --subnet <subnet>, 178
 --verify, 179
 -b, 178
 -d, 178
 -f, 178
 -l, 178

- m, 178
- n, 178
- s, 178
- loadbal-order-options command line option
 - datacenter <datacenter>, 179
 - d, 179
- loadbal-pool-add command line option
 - P, 175
 - backPort <backport>, 175
 - backProtocol <backprotocol>, 175
 - connections <connections>, 175
 - frontPort <frontport>, 175
 - frontProtocol <frontprotocol>, 175
 - method <method>, 175
 - sslCert <sslcert>, 175
 - sticky, 175
 - b, 175
 - c, 175
 - f, 175
 - m, 175
 - p, 175
 - s, 175
 - x, 175
 - IDENTIFIER, 175
- loadbal-pool-del command line option
 - IDENTIFIER, 177
 - LISTENER, 177
- loadbal-pool-edit command line option
 - P, 176
 - backPort <backport>, 176
 - backProtocol <backprotocol>, 176
 - clientTimeout <clienttimeout>, 176
 - connections <connections>, 176
 - frontPort <frontport>, 176
 - frontProtocol <frontprotocol>, 176
 - method <method>, 176
 - sslCert <sslcert>, 176
 - sticky, 176
 - b, 176
 - c, 176
 - f, 176
 - m, 176
 - p, 176
 - s, 176
 - t, 176
 - x, 176
 - IDENTIFIER, 176
 - LISTENER, 176
- LoadBalancerManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer*), 48
- LOCATION
 - hardware-create-options command line option, 149
 - order-item-list command line option, 185
 - order-place command line option, 187
 - order-place-quote command line option, 190
 - virtual-create-options command line option, 225
- LOCATIONS
 - image-datacenter command line option, 162
- LUN_ID
 - block-volume-set-lun-id command line option, 111
- M
 - metadata command line option
 - PROP, 120
 - METADATA_ATTRIBUTES (*SoftLayer.managers.metadata* attribute), 51
 - MetadataManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.metadata*), 50
 - METHOD
 - call-api command line option, 119
 - migrate() (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* method), 73
 - migrate_dedicated() (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* method), 73
 - module
 - SoftLayer, 82
 - SoftLayer.managers.account, 8
 - SoftLayer.managers.autoscale, 10
 - SoftLayer.managers.block, 11
 - SoftLayer.managers.cdn, 18
 - SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host, 21
 - SoftLayer.managers.dns, 23
 - SoftLayer.managers.email, 26
 - SoftLayer.managers.event_log, 27
 - SoftLayer.managers.file, 28
 - SoftLayer.managers.firewall, 34
 - SoftLayer.managers.hardware, 36
 - SoftLayer.managers.image, 42
 - SoftLayer.managers.ipsec, 44
 - SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer, 47
 - SoftLayer.managers.metadata, 50
 - SoftLayer.managers.network, 51
 - SoftLayer.managers.ordering, 57
 - SoftLayer.managers.sshkey, 62
 - SoftLayer.managers.ssl, 63
 - SoftLayer.managers.ticket, 65
 - SoftLayer.managers.vs, 67
 - SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity, 76
 - SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement, 78
- N
 - NAME
 - image-import command line option, 161

nas-credentials command line option

IDENTIFIER, 180

NETWORK

subnet-create command line option, 202

NetworkManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.network*), 51

NOTIFICATION

user-edit-notifications command line option, 212

O

object-storage-accounts command line option
--limit <limit>, 180

object-storage-credential-create command line option
IDENTIFIER, 182

object-storage-credential-delete command line option

--credential_id <credential_id>, 181

-c, 181

IDENTIFIER, 182

object-storage-credential-limit command line option

IDENTIFIER, 181

object-storage-credential-list command line option

IDENTIFIER, 181

order_block_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 16

order_duplicate_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 16

order_duplicate_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 32

order_file_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 32

order_guest() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 73

ORDER_ITEMS

order-place command line option, 187

order-place-quote command line option, 190

order_lbaas() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 49

order_modified_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 16

order_modified_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 32

order_quote() (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 60

order_replicant_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 17

order_replicant_volume() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 33

order_snapshot_space() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 17

order_snapshot_space() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 33

order-category-list command line option
--required, 184

PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 184

order-item-list command line option

--category <category>, 185

--keyword <keyword>, 185

--prices, 185

-c, 185

-k, 185

-p, 185

LOCATION, 185

PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 185

order-lookup command line option
--details, 191

IDENTIFIER, 191

order-package-list command line option
--keyword <keyword>, 183

--package_type <package_type>, 183

order-package-locations command line option
PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 183

order-place command line option

--billing <billing>, 186

--complex-type <complex_type>, 186

--extras <extras>, 186

--preset <preset>, 186

--quantity <quantity>, 186

--verify, 186

LOCATION, 187

ORDER_ITEMS, 187

PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 187

order-place-quote command line option
--complex-type <complex_type>, 190

--extras <extras>, 190

--name <name>, 190

--preset <preset>, 190

--send-email, 190

LOCATION, 190

ORDER_ITEMS, 190

PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 190

order-preset-list command line option

--keyword <keyword>, 185
 PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 186
 order-quote command line option
 -F, 188
 --complex-type <complex_type>, 188
 --fqdn <fqdn>, 188
 --image <image>, 188
 --key <key>, 188
 --postinstall <postinstall>, 188
 --quantity <quantity>, 188
 --userdata <userdata>, 188
 --userfile <userfile>, 188
 --verify, 188
 -i, 188
 -k, 188
 -u, 188
 QUOTE, 188

order-quote-detail command line option
 QUOTE, 189

order-quote-save command line option
 QUOTE, 189

OrderingManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.ordering), 57

ORIGIN

cdn-origin-add command line option, 116

ORIGIN_PATH

cdn-origin-remove command line option,
 117

ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID

block-volume-duplicate command line
 option, 108

file-volume-duplicate command line
 option, 140

P

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

order-category-list command line option,
 184

order-item-list command line option, 185

order-package-locations command line
 option, 183

order-place command line option, 187

order-place-quote command line option,
 190

order-preset-list command line option,
 186

package_locations() (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
 method), 60

PARAMETERS

call-api command line option, 119

PATH

cdn-origin-add command line option, 116

cdn-purge command line option, 117

place_order() (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager
 method), 23

place_order() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager
 method), 39

place_order() (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
 method), 60

place_quote() (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
 method), 61

PlacementManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement), 78

private_network() (SoftLayer.managers.metadata.MetadataManager
 method), 51

PROP

metadata command line option, 120

public_network() (SoftLayer.managers.metadata.MetadataManager
 method), 51

purge_content() (SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager
 method), 20

Python Enhancement Proposals
 PEP 8, 241

Q

QUANTITY

subnet-create command line option, 202

QUOTE

order-quote command line option, 188

order-quote-detail command line option,
 189

order-quote-save command line option, 189

R

RECORD

dns-record-add command line option, 126

RECORD_ID

dns-record-remove command line option,
 128

RECORD_TYPE

dns-record-add command line option, 126

reflash_firmware() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager
 method), 40

refresh_dupe() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
 method), 17

refresh_dupe() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
 method), 33

refresh_iam_token() (SoftLayer.IAMClient method),
 84

reload() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager
 method), 40

<code>reload_instance()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 74	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 17
<code>remove_certificate()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ssl.SSLManager method), 65	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager method), 20
<code>remove_internal_subnet()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 46	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager method), 23
<code>remove_lb_listener()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 50	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method), 25
<code>remove_locations()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method), 44	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.email.EmailManager method), 26
<code>remove_origin()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager method), 20	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 33
<code>remove_remote_subnet()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 46	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager method), 35
<code>remove_securitygroup_rule()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 56	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 40
<code>remove_securitygroup_rules()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 56	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method), 44
<code>remove_service_subnet()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 46	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 47
<code>remove_subnets_from_acl()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 17	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 50
<code>remove_translation()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 46	<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager method), 63
<code>report-bandwidth</code> command line option		<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method), 66
<code>--end <end></code> , 191		<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 75
<code>--server</code> , 192		<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager method), 78
<code>--sortby <sortby></code> , 191		<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager method), 79
<code>--start <start></code> , 191		<code>resolve_location_name()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 61
<code>--virtual</code> , 191		<code>resolve_subnet_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 56
REQUEST_ID		<code>resolve_vlan_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 56
<code>securitygroup-event-log</code> command line option, 197		<code>restore_from_snapshot()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 18
<code>rescue()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 40		<code>restore_from_snapshot()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 33
<code>rescue()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 74		RULE_ID
<code>resolve_global_ip_ids()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 56	<code>securitygroup-rule-edit</code> command line option, 195
<code>resolve_ids()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager method), 10		<code>securitygroup-rule-remove</code> command line option, 196

S

- `save_quote()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager* method), 62
- `scale()` (*SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager* method), 11
- `scale_to()` (*SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager* method), 11
- SECURITYGROUP_ID
 - `securitygroup-delete` command line option, 193
 - `securitygroup-interface-add` command line option, 197
 - `securitygroup-interface-list` command line option, 196
 - `securitygroup-interface-remove` command line option, 197
 - `securitygroup-rule-add` command line option, 195
 - `securitygroup-rule-edit` command line option, 195
 - `securitygroup-rule-list` command line option, 194
 - `securitygroup-rule-remove` command line option, 196
- `securitygroup-create` command line option
 - `--description` <description>, 193
 - `--name` <name>, 193
 - d, 193
 - n, 193
- `securitygroup-delete` command line option
 - SECURITYGROUP_ID, 193
- `securitygroup-detail` command line option
 - IDENTIFIER, 192
- `securitygroup-edit` command line option
 - `--description` <description>, 193
 - `--name` <name>, 193
 - d, 193
 - n, 193
 - GROUP_ID, 193
- `securitygroup-event-log` command line option
 - REQUEST_ID, 197
- `securitygroup-interface-add` command line option
 - `--interface` <interface>, 196
 - `--network-component` <network_component>, 196
 - `--server` <server>, 196
 - i, 196
 - n, 196
 - s, 196
 - SECURITYGROUP_ID, 197
- `securitygroup-interface-list` command line option
 - `--sortby` <sortby>, 196
- SECURITYGROUP_ID, 196
- `securitygroup-interface-remove` command line option
 - `--interface` <interface>, 197
 - `--network-component` <network_component>, 197
 - `--server` <server>, 197
 - i, 197
 - n, 197
 - s, 197
 - SECURITYGROUP_ID, 197
- `securitygroup-list` command line option
 - `--limit` <limit>, 192
 - `--sortby` <sortby>, 192
 - l, 192
- `securitygroup-rule-add` command line option
 - M, 194
 - `--direction` <direction>, 194
 - `--ethertype` <ethertype>, 194
 - `--port-max` <port_max>, 194
 - `--port-min` <port_min>, 195
 - `--protocol` <protocol>, 195
 - `--remote-group` <remote_group>, 194
 - `--remote-ip` <remote_ip>, 194
 - d, 194
 - e, 194
 - m, 195
 - p, 195
 - r, 194
 - s, 194
 - SECURITYGROUP_ID, 195
- `securitygroup-rule-edit` command line option
 - M, 195
 - `--direction` <direction>, 195
 - `--ethertype` <ethertype>, 195
 - `--port-max` <port_max>, 195
 - `--port-min` <port_min>, 195
 - `--protocol` <protocol>, 195
 - `--remote-group` <remote_group>, 195
 - `--remote-ip` <remote_ip>, 195
 - d, 195
 - e, 195
 - m, 195
 - p, 195
 - r, 195
 - s, 195
 - RULE_ID, 195
 - SECURITYGROUP_ID, 195
- `securitygroup-rule-list` command line option
 - `--sortby` <sortby>, 194
 - SECURITYGROUP_ID, 194
- `securitygroup-rule-remove` command line option
 - RULE_ID, 196

SECURITYGROUP_ID, 196

SERVICE

- call-api command line option, 119

set_credential_password() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 18

set_subnet_ipaddress_note() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 56

set_tags() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 56

set_tags() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 75

set_tags_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 56

setup command line option

- auth <auth>, 121
- a, 121

SNAPSHOT_ID

- block-snapshot-delete command line option, 104
- block-volume-refresh command line option, 111, 113
- file-snapshot-delete command line option, 136
- file-volume-refresh command line option, 142, 143

SoftLayer

- module, 82

SoftLayer.managers.account

- module, 8

SoftLayer.managers.autoscale

- module, 10

SoftLayer.managers.block

- module, 11

SoftLayer.managers.cdn

- module, 18

SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host

- module, 21

SoftLayer.managers.dns

- module, 23

SoftLayer.managers.email

- module, 26

SoftLayer.managers.event_log

- module, 27

SoftLayer.managers.file

- module, 28

SoftLayer.managers.firewall

- module, 34

SoftLayer.managers.hardware

- module, 36

SoftLayer.managers.image

- module, 42

SoftLayer.managers.ipsec

- module, 44

SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer

- module, 47

SoftLayer.managers.metadata

- module, 50

SoftLayer.managers.network

- module, 51

SoftLayer.managers.ordering

- module, 57

SoftLayer.managers.sshkey

- module, 62

SoftLayer.managers.ssl

- module, 63

SoftLayer.managers.ticket

- module, 65

SoftLayer.managers.vs

- module, 67

SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity

- module, 76

SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement

- module, 78

SoftLayerAPIError, 84

SoftLayerError, 84

SoftLayerListResult (class in SoftLayer), 84

sshkey-add command line option

- in-file <in_file>, 198
- key <key>, 198
- note <note>, 198
- f, 198
- k, 198
- LABEL, 198

sshkey-edit command line option

- label <label>, 198
- note <note>, 198
- k, 198
- IDENTIFIER, 199

sshkey-list command line option

- sortby <sortby>, 199

sshkey-print command line option

- out-file <out_file>, 199
- f, 199
- IDENTIFIER, 199

sshkey-remove command line option

- IDENTIFIER, 198

SshKeyManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.sshkey), 63

ssl-add command line option

- crt <crt>, 200
- csr <csr>, 200
- icc <icc>, 200
- key <key>, 200
- notes <notes>, 200

ssl-download command line option

IDENTIFIER, 200

ssl-edit command line option

- crt <crt>, 200
- csr <csr>, 200
- icc <icc>, 200
- key <key>, 200
- notes <notes>, 200

IDENTIFIER, 201

ssl-list command line option

- sortby <sortby>, 201
- status <status>, 201

ssl-remove command line option

IDENTIFIER, 201

SSLManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.ssl*), 64

start_data (*SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager* property), 20

SUBNET

- user-vpn-subnet command line option, 215

subnet-cancel command line option

IDENTIFIER, 202

subnet-create command line option

- ipv6, 202
- test, 202
- v6, 202

ENDPOINT_ID, 202

NETWORK, 202

QUANTITY, 202

subnet-detail command line option

- no-hardware, 203
- no-vs, 203

IDENTIFIER, 203

subnet-edit command line option

- note <note>, 203
- tags <tags>, 203
- n, 203
- t, 203

IDENTIFIER, 203

subnet-edit-ip command line option

- note <note>, 204

IDENTIFIER, 205

subnet-list command line option

- datacenter <datacenter>, 204
- identifier <identifier>, 204
- ipv4, 204
- ipv6, 204
- network-space <network_space>, 204
- sortby <sortby>, 204
- subnet-type <subnet_type>, 204
- v4, 204
- v6, 204
- d, 204
- t, 204

subnet-lookup command line option

IP_ADDRESS, 204

summary command line option

- sortby <sortby>, 191

summary_by_datacenter() (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 57

sync_host_record() (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* method), 25

sync_ptr_record() (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* method), 26

T

tags-cleanup command line option

- dry-run, 206
- d, 206

tags-delete command line option

- name, 206

IDENTIFIER, 206

tags-details command line option

- name, 206

IDENTIFIER, 206

tags-list command line option

- detail, 205
- d, 205

tags-set command line option

- key-name <key_name>, 205
- resource-id <resource_id>, 205
- tags <tags>, 205
- k, 205
- r, 205
- t, 205

TARGET

- firewall-add command line option, 145
- globalip-assign command line option, 146

ticket-attach command line option

- hardware <hardware_identifier>, 210
- virtual <virtual_identifier>, 210

IDENTIFIER, 210

ticket-create command line option

- body <body>, 207
- hardware <hardware_identifier>, 207
- priority <priority>, 207
- subject-id <subject_id>, 207
- title <title>, 207
- virtual <virtual_identifier>, 207

ticket-detach command line option

- hardware <hardware_identifier>, 210
- virtual <virtual_identifier>, 210

IDENTIFIER, 210

ticket-detail command line option

- count <count>, 208

IDENTIFIER, 208

ticket-list command line option

--closed, 208
--open, 208
ticket-update command line option
--body <body>, 209
IDENTIFIER, 209
ticket-upload command line option
--name <name>, 209
--path <path>, 209
IDENTIFIER, 209
TicketManager (*class in SoftLayer.managers.ticket*), 65
total_count (*SoftLayer.SoftLayerListResult attribute*), 84

U

unassign_global_ip() (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method*), 57
UNIQUE_ID
cdn-detail command line option, 115
cdn-origin-add command line option, 116
cdn-origin-list command line option, 116
cdn-origin-remove command line option, 117
cdn-purge command line option, 117
update_email() (*SoftLayer.managers.email.EmailManager method*), 27
update_firmware() (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method*), 40
update_lb_health_monitors() (*SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method*), 50
update_ticket() (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method*), 66
update_translation() (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager method*), 47
update_tunnel_context() (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager method*), 47
upgrade() (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method*), 41
upgrade() (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method*), 75
upload_attachment() (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method*), 66
URI
image-export command line option, 162
image-import command line option, 161
USER
user-edit-details command line option, 213
user-vpn-manual command line option, 215
user-vpn-subnet command line option, 215
user-create command line option
--email <email>, 214
--from-user <from_user>, 214
--password <password>, 214
--template <template>, 214
-e, 214
-p, 214
-t, 214
-u, 214
USERNAME, 214
user-delete command line option
IDENTIFIER, 214
user-detail command line option
--events, 211
--hardware, 211
--keys, 211
--logins, 211
--permissions, 211
--virtual, 211
-e, 211
-h, 211
-k, 211
-l, 211
-p, 211
-v, 211
IDENTIFIER, 211
user-edit-details command line option
--template <template>, 213
-t, 213
USER, 213
user-edit-notifications command line option
--disable, 212
--enable, 212
NOTIFICATION, 212
user-edit-permissions command line option
--disable, 213
--enable, 213
--from-user <from_user>, 213
--permission <permission>, 213
-p, 213
-u, 213
IDENTIFIER, 213
user-list command line option
--columns <columns>, 211
user-permissions command line option
IDENTIFIER, 212
user-vpn-manual command line option
--disable, 215
--enable, 215
USER, 215

user-vpn-subnet command line option
 --add, 215
 --remove, 215
 SUBNET, 215
 USER, 215
 USERNAME
 user-create command line option, 214

V

verify_create_instance() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.vs.VSManager method),
 75

verify_order() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager
 method), 23

verify_order() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager
 method), 41

verify_order() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
 method), 62

verify_quote() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
 method), 62

virtual-authorize-storage command line
 option
 --portable-id <portable_id>, 233
 --username-storage <username_storage>,
 233
 -u, 233
 IDENTIFIER, 234

virtual-bandwidth command line option
 --end_date <end_date>, 222
 --quite_summary, 222
 --start_date <start_date>, 222
 --summary_period <summary_period>, 222
 -e, 222
 -p, 222
 -q, 222
 -s, 222
 IDENTIFIER, 222

virtual-billing command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 231

virtual-cancel command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 222

virtual-capture command line option
 --all <all>, 222
 --name <name>, 222
 --note <note>, 222
 -n, 222
 IDENTIFIER, 223

virtual-create command line option
 -D, 223
 -F, 224
 -H, 223
 -S, 224
 --billing <billing>, 223
 --boot-mode <boot_mode>, 223
 --cpu <cpu>, 223
 --datacenter <datacenter>, 223
 --dedicated, 223
 --disk <disk>, 224
 --domain <domain>, 223
 --export <export>, 223
 --flavor <flavor>, 223
 --host-id <host_id>, 223
 --hostname <hostname>, 223
 --image <image>, 223
 --ipv6, 224
 --key <key>, 224
 --like <like>, 224
 --memory <memory>, 223
 --network <network>, 224
 --os <os>, 223
 --placementgroup <placementgroup>, 224
 --postinstall <postinstall>, 224
 --private, 224
 --private-security-group
 <private_security_group>, 224
 --public, 223
 --public-security-group
 <public_security_group>, 224
 --router-private <router_private>, 224
 --router-public <router_public>, 224
 --san, 223
 --subnet-private <subnet_private>, 224
 --subnet-public <subnet_public>, 224
 --tag <tag>, 224
 --template <template>, 224
 --test, 223
 --transient, 225
 --userdata <userdata>, 224
 --userfile <userfile>, 224
 --vlan-private <vlan_private>, 224
 --vlan-public <vlan_public>, 224
 --wait <wait>, 224
 -c, 223
 -d, 223
 -f, 223
 -g, 224
 -i, 224
 -k, 224
 -m, 223
 -n, 224
 -o, 223
 -s, 224
 -t, 224
 -u, 224

virtual-create-options command line option
--prices, 225
--vsi-type <vsi_type>, 225
-p, 225
LOCATION, 225

virtual-credentials command line option
IDENTIFIER, 233

virtual-detail command line option
--passwords, 232
--price, 232
IDENTIFIER, 232

virtual-dns-sync command line option
--a-record, 225
--aaaa-record, 225
--ptr, 225
--ttl <ttl>, 225
-a, 225
IDENTIFIER, 226

virtual-edit command line option
-D, 226
-F, 226
-H, 226
--domain <domain>, 226
--hostname <hostname>, 226
--private-speed <private_speed>, 226
--public-speed <public_speed>, 226
--tag <tag>, 226
--userdata <userdata>, 226
--userfile <userfile>, 226
-g, 226
-u, 226
IDENTIFIER, 226

virtual-list command line option
-D, 227
-H, 227
--all-guests, 227
--columns <columns>, 227
--cpu <cpu>, 227
--datacenter <datacenter>, 227
--domain <domain>, 227
--hardware, 227
--hostname <hostname>, 227
--hourly, 227
--limit <limit>, 227
--memory <memory>, 227
--monthly, 227
--network <network>, 227
--sortby <sortby>, 227
--tag <tag>, 227
--transient <transient>, 227
-c, 227
-d, 227
-l, 227
-m, 227
-n, 227

virtual-migrate command line option
--all, 233
--guest <guest>, 233
--host <host>, 233
-a, 233
-g, 233
-h, 233

virtual-pause command line option
IDENTIFIER, 228

virtual-power-off command line option
--hard, 228
--soft, 228
IDENTIFIER, 228

virtual-power-on command line option
IDENTIFIER, 228

virtual-ready command line option
--wait <wait>, 229
IDENTIFIER, 230

virtual-reboot command line option
--hard, 229
--soft, 229
IDENTIFIER, 229

virtual-reload command line option
--image <image>, 232
--key <key>, 232
--postinstall <postinstall>, 232
-i, 232
-k, 232
IDENTIFIER, 232

virtual-rescue command line option
IDENTIFIER, 229

virtual-resume command line option
IDENTIFIER, 229

virtual-storage command line option
IDENTIFIER, 231

virtual-upgrade command line option
--add-disk <add_disk>, 230
--cpu <cpu>, 230
--flavor <flavor>, 230
--memory <memory>, 230
--network <network>, 230
--private, 230
--resize-disk <resize_disk>, 230
IDENTIFIER, 230

virtual-usage command line option
--end_date <end_date>, 231
--start_date <start_date>, 231
--summary_period <summary_period>, 231
--valid_type <valid_type>, 231
-e, 231
-p, 231
-s, 231
-t, 231

IDENTIFIER, 231
 vlan-cancel command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 217
 vlan-create command line option
 --billing <billing>, 216
 --datacenter <datacenter>, 215
 --name <name>, 215
 --network <network>, 215
 --pod <pod>, 215
 -d, 215
 -p, 215
 vlan-detail command line option
 --no-hardware, 216
 --no-vs, 216
 IDENTIFIER, 216
 vlan-edit command line option
 --name <name>, 216
 --note <note>, 216
 --tags <tags>, 216
 -e, 216
 -g, 216
 -n, 216
 IDENTIFIER, 217
 vlan-list command line option
 --datacenter <datacenter>, 217
 --limit <limit>, 217
 --name <name>, 217
 --number <number>, 217
 --sortby <sortby>, 217
 -d, 217
 -l, 217
 -n, 217
 VOLUME_ID
 block-access-authorize command line
 option, 99
 block-access-list command line option,
 100
 block-access-revoke command line option,
 100
 block-disaster-recovery-failover
 command line option, 114
 block-replica-failback command line
 option, 101
 block-replica-failover command line
 option, 101
 block-replica-locations command line
 option, 103
 block-replica-order command line option,
 102
 block-replica-partners command line
 option, 102
 block-snapshot-cancel command line
 option, 103
 block-snapshot-create command line
 option, 103
 block-snapshot-disable command line
 option, 104
 block-snapshot-enable command line
 option, 105
 block-snapshot-list command line option,
 105
 block-snapshot-order command line
 option, 106
 block-snapshot-restore command line
 option, 106
 block-snapshot-schedule-list command
 line option, 105
 block-volume-cancel command line option,
 107
 block-volume-convert command line
 option, 112, 113
 block-volume-detail command line option,
 107
 block-volume-modify command line option,
 110
 block-volume-refresh command line
 option, 111, 113
 block-volume-set-lun-id command line
 option, 111
 block-volume-set-note command line
 option, 114
 file-access-authorize command line
 option, 132
 file-access-list command line option, 132
 file-access-revoke command line option,
 133
 file-disaster-recovery-failover command
 line option, 144
 file-replica-failback command line
 option, 133
 file-replica-failover command line
 option, 133
 file-replica-locations command line
 option, 135
 file-replica-order command line option,
 134
 file-replica-partners command line
 option, 134
 file-snapshot-cancel command line
 option, 135
 file-snapshot-create command line
 option, 135
 file-snapshot-disable command line
 option, 136
 file-snapshot-enable command line
 option, 137
 file-snapshot-list command line option,

137
file-snapshot-order command line option,
138
file-snapshot-restore command line
option, 138
file-snapshot-schedule-list command
line option, 143
file-volume-cancel command line option,
138
file-volume-convert command line option,
143, 144
file-volume-detail command line option,
139
file-volume-modify command line option,
141
file-volume-refresh command line option,
142, 143
file-volume-set-note command line
option, 144
volume_set_note() (Soft-
Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
method), 18
volume_set_note() (Soft-
Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
method), 34
VSManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.vs), 67

W

wait_for_ready() (Soft-
Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager
method), 41
wait_for_ready() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager
method), 76
wait_for_transaction() (Soft-
Layer.managers.vs.VSManager method),
76

Z

ZONE
dns-record-list command line option, 128
dns-zone-create command line option, 128
dns-zone-delete command line option, 128
dns-zone-print command line option, 129
ZONE_ID
dns-record-edit command line option, 127
ZONEFILE
dns-import command line option, 125